DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 184 314 **FL 010 990**

TITLE	Chinese-Mandarin: Basic Course. Volume III, Lessons 28-39.
INSTITUTION	Defense Language Inst., Monterey, Calif.
PUB DATE	Apr 65
NOTE	326p.; For related documents, see FL 010 988-992 and FL 011 000-010.
AVAILABLE FROM	Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center, Nonresident Division, Presidio of Monterey, CA 93940 ($5.55: accompanying cassettes $9.60)
LANGUAGE	Chinese; English
EDRS PRICE	MF01/PC14 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS	Audiolingual Methods; *Grammar; *Ideography; Instructional Materials; *Mandarin Chinese; *Military Science; Pattern Drills (Language); Reading Instruction; *Second Language Instruction; Second Language Learning; *Translation; Writing Instruction
IDENTIFIERS	*Dialogs (Language Learning)

ABSTRACT

This is the third of 16 volumes of audiolingual classroom instruction in Mandarin Chinese. The course is designed to train native English speakers to Level 3 Foreign Service Institute proficiency in comprehension and speaking, and to Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Mandarin. The present volume emphasizes the development of facility in reading and writing Chinese characters. Instructional materials in the 12 lessons include dialogues, grammar analyses, translation and question-answering exercises, pattern drills, and reading and writing exercises. The emphasis of the course is on military science. (JB)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

CM 0003 S

CHINESE-MANDARIN

BASIC COURSE

VOLUME III
LESSONS 28-39

ED184314

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH
EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF
EDUCATION

[illegible]

PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS
MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
DLI

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES
INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)

April 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

FL010 990

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

THIS PUBLICATION IS TO BE USED PRIMARILY IN SUPPORT OF TRAINING MILITARY PERSONNEL AS PART OF THE DEFENSE LANGUAGE PROGRAM (RESIDENT AND NONRESIDENT). INQUIRIES CONCERNING THE USE OF THE MATERIALS, INCLUDING REQUESTS FOR COPIES, SHOULD BE ADDRESSED TO:

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER
NONRESIDENT INSTRUCTION DIVISION
PRESIDIO OF MONTEREY, CA 93940

TOPICS IN THE AREAS OF POLITICS, INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS, MORES, ETC., WHICH MAY BE CONSIDERED AS CONTROVERSIAL FROM SOME POINTS OF VIEW ARE SOMETIMES INCLUDED IN LANGUAGE TRAINING FOR DLIFLC STUDENTS, SINCE MILITARY PERSONNEL MAY FIND THEMSELVES IN POSITIONS WHERE CLEAR UNDERSTANDING OF CONVERSATIONS OR WRITTEN MATERIAL OF THIS NATURE WILL BE ESSENTIAL TO THEIR MISSION. THE PRESENCE OF CONTROVERSIAL STATEMENTS--WHETHER REAL OR APPARENT--IN DLIFLC MATERIALS SHOULD NOT BE CONSTRUED AS REPRESENTING THE OPINIONS OF THE WRITERS, OF THE DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE, OR OF THE DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE.

CM 0003 S

CHINESE-MANDARIN
BASIC COURSE

Volume III

Lessons 28-39

April 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

PRINTED JUNE 1967
REPRINTED MAY 1968
REPRINTED MARCH 1972
REPRINTED JANUARY 1975
REPRINTED SEPTEMBER 1978

PREFACE

The Chinese-Mandarin Course, consisting of 180 lessons in 16 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute and approved for publication by the Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese-Mandarin. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LESSON PAGE

28 - 1

29 - 29

30 - 57

31 - 85

32 - 107

33 - 131

34 - 157

35 - 185

36 - 209

37 - 233

38 - 263

39 - 293

Vocabulary Index - - - - - - - - - - - - - - 321

LESSON 28

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A:	今天早上你作甚麼了.	What did you do this morning?
B:	我 bă jwō子 賣了.	I sold a table.
A:	你 bă 那個 jwō子 賣了?	Which table did you sell?
B:	我 bă 我太太的 jwō子 賣了.	I sold my wife's table.
A:	今天早上你太太作甚麼了?	What did your wife do this morning?
B:	他 bă yīshang sùnggĕi 人了.	She gave away some clothes.
A:	他 bă 甚麼 yīshang sùnggĕi 人了?	What clothes did she give away?
B:	他 bă 我的 yīshang sùnggĕi 人了.	She gave away my clothes.
A:	他 bă 你的 yīshang sùnggĕi shéi 了?	To whom did she give your clothes?
B:	他 bă 我的 yīshang sùnggĕi Jāng 先生了.	She gave my clothes to Mr. Jāng.

2.	A:	Jāng 先生，你 bǎ 甚麼 東西 gěi Lǐ 先生 了？	Mr Jāng, what did you give to Mr. Lǐ?
	B:	我 bǎ byǎu gěi 他 了．	I gave him a watch.
	A:	你 bǎ 甚麼 東西 gěi Jàu 先生 了？	What did you give to Mr. Jàu?
	B:	我 bǎ jyǒu gěi 他 了．	I gave him wine.
	A:	Lǐ 先生 gēn Jàu 先生 bǎ 甚麼 東西 gěi 你 了？	What did Mr. Lǐ and Mr. Jàu give you?
	B:	他們 bǎ 不要的東西 dōu gěi 我 了．	They gave me things they don't want.
3.	A:	你們 今天 早上 bānjyā, 一dǐng hěn máng ba?	You must have been very busy when you moved this morning?
	B:	不太 máng, yǐnwèi 人 多. 我 大 兒 子 bǎ yǐ子 bān 到 這兒來了.	Not very busy, because we had many people. My eldest son moved the chairs here.
	A:	Nín 二 兒子 bǎ 甚麼 東西 bān 到 這兒來了?	What did your second son move here?

	B:	他 bǎ wán兒的東西 dōu bān到這兒來了.	He moved all his play things here.
	A:	Nín 大女兒 bǎ 甚麼東西 bān到這兒來了?	What did your eldest daughter move here?
	B:	他 bǎ 作 yīshang 用的東西 dōu bān到這兒來了.	She moved all the things for making clothes here.
	A:	Nín 太太 bǎ 甚麼東西 bān到這兒來了?	What did your wife move here?
	B:	他 bǎ 作fàn 用的東西 dōu bān到這兒來了.	She moved all the cooking utensils here.
	A:	Shéi bǎ nín的 jwō子 bān到這兒來了?	Who moved all your tables here?
	B:	我 gēn 我兒子 bǎ jwō子 dōu bān到這兒來了.	I and my sons moved all the tables here.
4.	A:	你父chīn hěn máng bǎ?	Your father must be very busy, I suppose?
	B:	Mángjí了. 昨天 jìnchéng了, 今天 yòu jìnchéng了.	He is very busy. Yesterday he went to town and again today.

	A:	他昨天去了, wèi 甚麼今天 yòu 去?	He went yesterday. Why did he go again today?
	B:	昨天他到 chéng 裡火車 jàn děng péngyou. Péngyou 沒來. 所以今天 yòu 去.	He went to the train depot in the city to wait for a friend. The friend didn't come. Therefore, he went again today.
	A:	他明天 dzài jìnchéng 麼?	Will he go to town again tomorrow?
	B:	要是他的 péngyou 今天不來他 hái děi dzài 去.	If his friend doesn't come today, then he will go again.
5.	A:	Děng 一hwěi 兒 nín 要到那兒去?	Where are you going a little later?
	B:	我要到 fàngwǎn 兒去 chīfàn.	I am going to a restaurant to eat.
	A:	Shéi gēn nín 一kwài 兒去?	Who is going with you?
	B:	我太太, 小 hái 兒 gēn 我 一kwài 兒去.	My wife and children are going with me.

A: 你們 也 hējyǒu 麼?	Do you drink too?
B: 我們 一dyǎn 兒 jyǒu dōu 不hē.	We don't drink at all.

II. Basic Dialogue

1.	Bái:	Lǐ 先生，nín 在 上hǎi 的 shŕhou, nín jù的 fáng子 hěn 大 ba.	When you were in Shànghǎi the house you lived in must have been very big, Mr. Lee.
	Lǐ:	Dwèi 了. Fàntīng hěn 大，書fáng 也 hěn 大. 有 hěn 多 中gwo 書.	That is right. The dining room was very large and so was the study room. There were many Chinese books.
	Bái:	後來 nín bān 到 那兒 去了?	Where did you move afterwards?
	Lǐ:	Bān 到 Táiwān 去了	I moved to Taiwan.
	Bái:	Nín bǎ 書 也 dōu bān 到 Táiwān 去了 麽?	Did you move all your books to Taiwan.
	Lǐ:	沒有. 我 bǎ 書 dōu sùnggěi 人 了.	No, I didn't. I gave all my books away to some people.
	Bái:	Wèi 甚麽?	Why?
	Lǐ:	我 是 坐 fēijī 到 Táiwān 去的. 書 太 多 不好 bān.	I went to Taiwan by airplane. It was not easy to ship too many books.

Bái:	Nín 在 Táiwān yòu 買了 hěn 多 中gwo 書麼?	Did you buy many Chinese books again when you were in Taiwan.
Lǐ:	Dwèi 了. 我 yòu 買了 hěn 多 中gwo 書.	Yes, I bought a lot of Chinese books again.
Bái:	Nín hwéi Měigwo 的 shŕhou, yòu bǎ 那 syē 書 sùnggěi 人了麼?	Did you give away the books to people when you returned to this country?
Lǐ:	沒有. 我用了一個 dzàijùng 車 bǎ 書 bān 到 chwán 上. 我是坐 chwán hwéi Měigwo 來的.	No, I didn't. I moved the books to the boat by a large truck and I came back to America by boat.
Bái:	Nín 的 中gwo 書 jēn 不少.	You really have quite a few Chinese books.
Lǐ:	我 hái 要 dzài 買 jǐ十本, yīnwei 我 hěn syǐhwan kàn 中gwo 書.	I still want to buy several dozen volumes of Chinese books, because I like to read them.

L. 28

2.	A:	Láujyà, 我 syǎng jr̄dàu 你們 那 lyán 有 多少 chyāng gēn pàu.	Pardon me. I would like to know how many rifles and guns are there in your company.
	B:	Chǐng 你 wèn ba.	Ask me please.
	A:	你們 有 多少 jr̄ chyāng?	How many small arms are there?
	B:	有 八十 jǐjr̄ chyāng.	There are more than eighty small arms.
	A:	Dōu 是 甚麽 chyāng?	What kinds of small arms are they?
	B:	有 bùchyāng, shǒuchyāng, kǎbīnchyāng gen jīgwānchyāng.	They are rifles, pistols, carbines, and machine guns.
	A:	有 jǐtǐng jīgwānchyāng?	How many machine guns are there?
	B:	有 六 tǐng jīgwānchyāng.	There are six machine guns.
	A:	你們 那 lyán 也 有 pàu 麽?	Do you have guns?
	B:	有 四 mén pàu.	There are four guns.

A:	Dōu 是 甚麼 pàu?	What kinds of guns are they?
B:	有 一 mén gāushèpàu, 三 mén jànfángpàu.	There is one antiaircraft gun and three antitank guns.
A:	你們 沒有 shānpàu gēn yějànpàu 麼?	Don't you have mountain guns and field guns?
B:	沒有.	No, we don't.
A:	要是 我 hái 有 要 jr̄dàu 的 事ching 我 可以 dzài 來 wèn nín 麼?	Can I come and ask you again if there is more I want to know?
B:	可以.	Yes, you can.
A:	Syèsye.	Thank you.

Vocabulary

1.	bă	把	CV:	(brings object to front of main verb)
2.	dzài	再	A:	again (in future)
3.	dzàijùngchē	載重車	N:	truck
4.	fàntīng	飯廳	N:	dining room (eating hall)
5.	kăbīnchyāng	卡賓槍	N:	carbine
6.	láujyà	勞駕	IE:	may I trouble you? much obliged!
7.	mén	門	M:	(measure for artillery pieces)
8.	-r	兒	P:	(diminutive suffix to nouns)
9.	shānpàu	山炮	N:	mountain piece
10.	Shànghăi	上海	N:	Shanghai
11.	shūfáng	書房	N:	study, den (book room)
11.1	nyànshu	念書	VO:	study books, go to school
12.	sùng(gĕi)	送(給)	V:	present (as a gift)
13.	tĭng	挺	M:	(measure for machine guns)
14.	yĕjànpàu	野戰炮	N:	field piece
15.	yòu	又	A:	again (in past)

III. Grammar Analysis

1. The bǎ Construction

The co-verb bǎ serves to draw the object of the sentence up to just in front of the main verb, from which position it receives the action of the verb. One of the commonest uses of the bǎ construction is in sentences with compound verbs. The particles (bù-, méi) modify the main verbs, and they precede "bǎ".

Wǒ	bǎ	byǎu	gěi tā le.
Tā	méibǎ	chyán	gěi wǒ.
Lǐ Syānsheng	bǎ	fángdz	màile.
Syǎu háidz	bǎ	táng	dōu chřle.
Nǐ	bǎ	shū, jř, hwàr	dōu mǎiláile ma?
Shéi	bǎ	yú	chřle?
Pùdzlǐde rén	bǎ	màudz	sùngláile.
Nǐ	bǎ	jwōdz	bānchyù.
Tā wèishémma	bùbǎ	chwānghu	gwānshang?
Chǐng nǐ	bǎ	chìchē	kāidàu jèr lái.
Wáng Syānsheng	méibǎ	tāde jyā	bāndàu Táiwān chyù.

Nǐmen	syān	bǎ	nèiběn	shū	kànkan.
Nǐ	kéyi	bǎ	nǐde	yìsz	syědzài jřshang.
Láujya, chǐng	kwài	bǎ	nèige	mén	gwānshang.
Tā	bùbi	bǎ	tāde	màudz	sùnggei wǒ.

L. 28

Nǐ	děi	bǎ	nèiwèi	Jāng Syáujye	chǐnglai.
Tā	dzěmma hái	méibǎ		pàudàn	sùnglai?
Wǒ tàitai	yǐjǐng	bǎ		chìchē	kāilaile.
Jyàu tā	byé	bǎ	nǐ sùnggei tāde	shǒu-chyāng	màile.
Shéi	yǒu	bǎˇ	wǒ dzwótyan mǎide	jyǒu	hēle.
Nǐ	bùyīngdāng	bǎ	Wáng Jyūntwánjǎngde	yān	dōu chōule.
Shr̄jǎng	yǐjǐng	bǎ	yàu gēn wǒmen shwōde	hwà	dōu shwōle.

Translate the following using the bǎ construction:

1) Where have you moved the artillery shells?

2) Did you close the door?

3) Have you bought the meat and vegetables?

4) Please drink the wine, and we will have our food.

5) My wife didn't come home because I didn't give her the key.

6) That pair of shoes is nice looking, did you buy it.

7) Please move the tables and chairs from the study to the dining room.

2. Dzài Compared with yǒu

a. Dzài is used when the repetition of an action did not happen in the past, and dzài is placed after the word mei(you) and before the verb:

Dzwótyan tā gēn wǒ shwōle, hòulai méi gen wǒ dzài shwō.	He spoke to me yesterday, but didn't do so afterwards.
Wǒ nyànle yíkè, hòulai méi dzài nyàn.	I read one lesson, but didn't do so afterwards.

b. *Yòu* shows that the repetition of an action or a state has taken place:

Dzwótyan tā láile, jīntyan tā yòu láile.	He came yesterday and again today.
Shànglǐbài nǐ méichyu, jèilǐbài nǐ yòu méichyu.	Last week you didn't go and so this week.

Sometimes, an action or situation is not yet repeated (especially a periodic action), but the speaker is very sure that the action is bound to be repeated, then *yòu* is also used:

Míngtyan yòu shr Lǐbàisān le.	Tomorrow will be Wednesday again.
Hwéijyā de shŕhou wǒmen yòu kěyi wǎrle.	We can play again when we go home.

3. *Dzài* Compared With *hái*

Dzài expresses a repetition which is not yet realized, *hái* may also express such a repetition. Their different uses are as follows:

L. 28

a. In the interrogative sentence, hái, instead of dzài, is used:

Nǐ jīntyan jìnle chéng, míngtyan hái jìnchéng ma?	You went to town today, will you go again tomorrow?

b. In the declarative sentence, when there is an auxiliary verb, hái is used before it and dzài after it in the same clause:

Jèige gùshr̀ hǎujíle, wǒ kànle lyǎngtsz̀ hái syǎng (dzài) kàn.	This story is extremely interesting. I want to read it again.

Translate the following:

1) Fish is too expensive; please don't buy it again.

2) Let us go to that restaurant to eat again, because the food there is delicious.

3) This morning he went to San Francisco again by driving.

4) She bought new clothes yesterday and again she bought a new hat today.

5) On the first of this month, he went to New York, and again on the fifth of this month he went to San Francisco.

6) I gave Mr. Wáng's son a dollar and again I gave him some candy.

4. Diminutive Suffix -r

The suffix -r is added to a large number of nouns. It is derived from ér (child, smallness), but its effect on a word is not limited to this meaning. It is not pronounced as a separate syllable, but is pronounced with the syllable before it. It usually modifies the sound of that syllable (hwà ér → hwàr).

Words With Suffix -r	Originally Without -r	
hwàr	hwà	picture
gēr	gē	song
sháur	sháu	spoon
syăuhár	syăuhái	small child
fàngwăr	fàngwăn	restaurant
yìdyăr	yìdyăn	a little
yìhwĕr	yìhwèi	a moment
yíkwàr	yíkwài	together
jèr	jè (this)	here
nèr	nà (that)	there
năr	nă (which)	where

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

The bǎ construction

Subject bǎ object verb

A: 我 bǎ mén gwān 了 .	I closed the door.
Examples:	
1) 我 bǎ 車 賣了 .	I sold the car.
2) 我 yǐjing bǎ yú chr̄ 了 .	I have already eaten the fish.
3) 他們bǎ 錢 dōu 用了 .	They spent all the money.
4) 你 bǎ gěi Jāng 先生的 syìn 寫 了麼?	Have you written the letter to Mr. Jang?

Exercise:

Answer the following orally:

1) Shéi bǎ mén kāile?

2) Shéi bǎ chwānghu kāile?

3) Shéi bǎ mén gwānle?

4) Shéi bǎ chwānghu gwānle?

5) Nǐ ywànyi bǎ nèijāng hwàr màile ma?

6) Nǐ bǎ jèisye jyùdz dōu dzwòle ma?

7) Tā yǐngdāng bǎ tāde chìchē màile ma?

8) Nǐ mǔchin bǎ shémma màile?

9) Nǐ bǎ gěi nǐ gēgede syìn syěle ma?

10) Nǐ méibǎ nǐde Jūnggwo shū màile ba?

B: 我 bǎ bǐ gěi 他了. I gave him the pen.

Examples:

1) 我 bǎ lǐngdài sùnggei 他 dìdi 了. I gave the necktie to his younger brother.

2) 他沒 bǎ kǎbīnchyāng gěi hái子 wár. He did not give the carbine to the child to play.

3) 你 kwài bǎ 東西 gěi 他. Give him these things quickly.

4) Měigwo bǎ 很多 dànyàu sùnggei Táiwān 了. America has given a lot of ammunition to Taiwan.

Exercise:

Answer the following orally:

1) Nǐ érdz cháng bǎ wárde dūngsyi sùnggei péngyou ma?
2) Nǐ fùchin syǐhwan bǎ jyòu shū sùnggei péngyou ma?
3) Tā méibǎ syīn jwōdz sùnggei nǐ dìdi ma?
4) Nǐ bǎ shéide byǎu sùnggei nǐ nyǔ péngyou le?
5) Shéi bǎ jèige wūdzde hwàr sùnggei byéren le?
6) Wǒmen yīngdāng bǎ byérende dūngsyi sùnggei péngyou ma?
7) Sywésheng néng bǎ jyòu chyānbǐ gěi byéren ma?
8) Sywésheng néng bǎ sywésyaude shū gěi byéren ma?
9) Nǐ yàu bǎ nǐde chyán dōu gěi nǐ tàitai ma?
10) Měigwo ywànyi buywànyi bǎ dànyàu sùnggei Ègwo?

C: 他們 bǎ yǐ子 bān 到外頭去了. They have moved the chair outside.

Examples:

1) 不要 bǎ jwō子 bān 到 jyē上去. Do not move the table to the street.

2) Shéi bǎ dzài jùng車 kāi-到 syāng下 去了 ?	Who drove the truck to the countryside?
3) 你 甚麼 shŕhou bǎ jyā bān到 上 hǎi 去了 ?	When did you move your family to Shanghai?
4) 他 bǎ 那 jyù 話 說了 jyòu 走了 .	He left after he had spoken that sentence.

Exercise:

Answer the following orally:

1) Tā bá jànchē kāidau nǎr chyùle?

2) Tā bá shémma bāndau shūfang lǐtou chyùle?

3) Shéi bǎ wǒde dūngsyi bāndau fàntīngli chyùle?

4) Shéi bǎ nei sānmen yějànpàu bāndau chyántou láile?

5) Nǐ wéishemma meibǎ nèimen shānpàu bāndzou?

6) Shéi bǎ jeitǐng jīgwānchyāng sùngláide?

7) Nǐ yàu wǒ bǎ neilyàng chìchē kāidau jèr lái ma?

8) Yǐngjǎng shwō bǎ chwán dōu kāidau nǎr chyu?

9) Nǐ dàu Shànghǎi chyùde shŕhou yě yàu bǎ jyā bānchyu ma?

10) Shéi bǎ fàntīnglide jwōdz bāndau lóushang chyùle?

Pattern 2

The uses of dzài, yòu, and hái

A: The use of dzài

請 dzài 吃 一 dyǎr. Please eat some more.

Examples:

1) Chĭng dzài kànkan.	Please look at it again.
2) 一個不 gou，我要 dzài 買一個.	One is not enough. I want to buy another.
3) 我 jyāu 了那個 sywé 生三天，後來没 dzài jyāu 他.	After having taught that student for three days, I did not teach him again.

Exercise:

a. Answer the following orally:

1) Jèibĕn shū nĭ ywànyi dzài kànkan ma?
2) Jèisye dż nĭ kéyi dzài syĕsye ma?
3) Jèige gēr nĭ dzài chāngchang, hău buhău?
4) Nèige fàngwăr nĭ yàu dzài chyù ma?
5) Nĭ yàu buyàu dzài dàu tā jyā chyù?

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Do you want to go to that place again?
2) Why don't you write her another letter?
3) Please send ten more carbines to the Second Platoon.
4) He has enough, don't give him any more.
5) I understand it now, you don't need to say it again.

B: The use of yòu

昨天他 chūmen 了. 今天他 yòu chūmen 了.	He went out yesterday. He went out again today.

Examples:

1) 我太太上 lǐbài 買了一個 màu子，這 lǐbài yòu 買了一個.	My wife bought a hat last week. She bought another one this week.
2) 我們說了一個 gù事，可是他們不 syǐhwan, 所以我們 yòu 說了一個	We told them a story, but they did not like it. Therefore we told them another one.
3) 昨天他來 jǎu你，dzěn-麼今天 yòu 來了？	He came to look for you yesterday. How come he came again today?

Exercise:

a. Answer the following orally:

1) Dzwótyan wǒ shwō byé dzài shūfáng chr̄fan, wèishémma nǐ yòu dzài shūfáng chr̄fan?

2) Dzǎushang tā shàngjyēle, syàndzài wèishémma yòu shàngjyēle?

3) Nǐ wèishémma yòu dzài shàngkède shŕhou chr̄ táng?

4) Wǒ chǐng Jāng syáujye chr̄ fàn, tā yòu shwō méigūngfu, tā hěn máng ma?

5) Tā yòu shwō wǒ méiyung, wǒ yīngdāng dǎ tā ma?

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Did the children play in the dining room again?

2) He drank again yesterday.

3) He told me again that I should write faster.

4) He told us another story yesterday.

5) They went downstairs again to see Mr. Wang.

C: The use of hái

上 lǐbài 我們 chr̄了日- běn fàn，明天 hái (dzài) chr̄ 日 běnfàn 麼？	We ate Japanese food last week. Will we eat Japanese food again tomorrow?

Examples:

1) 我們這個月念這本書，下個月 hái 要 (dzài) 念這本書麼 ?	We are studying this book this month. Are we still going to study this book next month?
2) 父 chin 說不要 chōu yān, dzěn麼你 hái 要 (dzài) chōu?	Father says we should not smoke. Why do you still want to smoke?
3) 你明天 hái 要 (dzài) jyāu 我們麼？	Do you still want to teach us tomorrow?

Exercise:

a. Answer the following orally:

1) Nǐ hwèi syě lyòushŕwǔge Jūnggwo dž le, nǐ hái syǎng (dzài) sywé ma?

2) Nǐ hái syǎng (dzài) chyù Táiwān ma?

3) Měigwo hái yàu (dzài) gěi Táiwān kūngjyūn fēijī ma?

4) Nǐmen hái děi (dzài) jù lyǔgwǎn ma?

5) Nèiyipái hái děi (dzài) sywé kāi dzàijùngchē ma?

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Do you still want to read the newspaper?

2) I want to hear that story again.

3) It is very expensive now, do you still want to buy another one?

4) You have bought a hat already, do you want to buy another one?

5) He likes Shanghai very much, he wants to visit there again.

Pattern 3

The use of diminutive suffix er

那個 fàngwǎr (fàngwǎn 兒) dzài di 一 jyē.	That restaurant is on First Street.

Examples:

1) 你 bǎ 那 sye hwàr兒 sùnggei 我 ba.	Will you please give me these pictures.
2) 他的 gēr 好tīngji了.	His songs are most beautiful.
3) 那個 小 hái 兒 yòu 用 sháur hēchá 了.	That child again used a spoon to drink his tea.

Exercise:

Answer the following orally:

1) Nèige fàngwǎrde tsài gwèi ma?
2) Nǐ hái gen wǒmen yíkwàr dzwò jyùdz ma?
3) Nǐ kéyi bukéyi kwài yìdyǎr pǎu?
4) Wǒde syǎuhár dzài budzài jèr?
5) Wǒmen dzài tán yìhwěr, búyaujǐn ba.
6) Diyìyíngde nèimén shānpàu dzài nǎr?
7) Jèr yǒu dwōshautǐng jīgwānchyāng?
8) Nèrde kǎbīnchyāng dōu shr něiyiyíngde?
9) Syǎuhár dōu ài dàu syāngsya chyu wár ma?
10) Dzài jyǒugwǎr hē jyǒude rén dōu yǒuchyán ma?

Homework

Rearrange the following by using the bǎ construction:

1) Lǐ Shàngsyàu gěile wǒ tāde kǎbīngchyāng.

2) Shéi nále wǒde shū?

3) Chǐng nǐ kāikai chwānghu.

4) Tā méimài tāde fángdz gěi wǒ.

5) Shéi sùnggei wǒ jèisye dūngsyi?

6) Búyàu gēn nǐ tàitai shwō jèijyan shr̀.

7) Byé bān jèijang jwōdz dàu wàitou chyù.

8) Wǒ yàu nǐ gěi wǒ syīn gāngkwēi.

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos 104-111)

104. 老	lǎu	SV: A:	old (in years) always, keep on	老朋友 老了	- old friend - has aged
105. 朋	péng	BF:	friend	朋友	- friend
106. 友	yǒu	BF:	friend	朋友	- friend
107. 又	yòu	A:	again (completed action)	又請你 又來了	- invite you again - came again
108. 想	syǎng	V: AV:	think consider, plan to, want to	想想 想 sywé hwàhwà 兒	- think over, think about - want to learn to paint
109. 請	chǐng	V:	invite, request; please	請坐 請吃飯	- please be seated - invite (people) to dinner
110. 吃 喫	chr̄	V:	eat	吃飯 吃東西	- eat (meal) - eat (something)
111. 飯	fàn	N:	food, cooked rice, meal	早飯 中飯 晚飯	- breakfast - noon meal - supper

B. Sentences

1. 你的老朋友坐在甚麼地方？
2. 我的老朋友坐在前頭.
3. 他 hwèi 寫字麼？
4. Hwèi 寫字. 念書,説話,作事 dōu hwèi.
5. 他今天來作甚麼？
6. 又想請我吃飯.
7. Wèi 甚麼又請你吃飯？
8. 昨天他請我了. 我沒去.
9. Wèi 甚麼？
10. 昨天他請的人太多, 所以我沒去.
11. 他要請你吃甚麼東西？
12. 我想是日本飯.
13. 我可以 gēn 你一 kwài 兒去麼？
14. 不可以, 他沒請你.
15. 他甚麼 shŕhou 從他那兒到這兒來的？
16. 今天早上.
17. 他要用多少錢請你吃飯？

18. 要用兩 kwài 二毛五分錢.

19. Wèi甚麼？

20. Yīnwèi 在那個飯 gwǎn 兒吃飯,一個人 děi 用兩 kwài 二毛五分錢.

21. 我bǎ 那 syē 書 dōu 買來了.

22. 他想請你 bǎ 這 syē 東西 sùng 去, 行麼?

C. Story

從一九四八到一九五七這十年裡頭, 父chin 寫了 hěn 多書, 可是 dōu 沒人要. 去年 父chin jyòu 用了兩個月的工夫, 用 Yīng文寫了一本書. jyàu「在火車上.」一gùng jyòu 有三萬多字. 這本書在半年裡頭賣了二十萬五千多本. 昨天父chin 的老朋友們請父chin 母chin 在一個中gwo 飯gwǎn 兒吃飯. 吃了飯,母chin 先回家. 他 gàusung 我們:「今天晚上人 jēn 多. 那個

飯 gwǎn 兒, 地方 hěn 大, 前頭, 後頭坐了好 jǐ 百人, 飯 gwǎn 兒外頭也有不少人. 男的, 女的, 大人小 hái 子 dōu 要 kànkan 父 chin. 有 jǐ 位 hěn 有錢的 kè 人, 他們 dōu 要買父 chin 四八到五七年寫的書.」小 dìdi wèn 「這 syē 書 wèi 甚麼那個 shíhou 沒人買, syàn 在人人 dōu 想買?」母 chin 說: 「你太小. Syàn 在我 gàusung 你, 你也不 dǔng.」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 66-70)

甚 麽 好 東 西

B. Radicals

1. 甘 (sweet, 99) as in: 甚
2. 麻 (hemp, 200) as in: 麽
3. 女 (female, 38) as in: 好
4. 木 (wood, 75) as in: 東
5. 襾 (a cover, 146) as the word: 西

LESSON 29

I. Structural Dialogue

1. A:	Jāng 先生，請你 bǎ 我的 yǐ子 bān上來.	Mr. Jāng, please move my chair up here.
B:	Lǐ 先生，請你 bǎ 我的 jwō子 bān下來.	Mr. Lǐ, please move my table down here.
A:	你先 bān上來，行不行？	How about your moving it up here first?
B:	我不néng先bān上去，你先bān下來，行不行？	I can't move it up there first, how about your moving it down here first?
A:	我也不néng先bān下去，你上來，我gēn你tántan, 好不好？	I can't move it down there first. How about coming up here and have a talk?
B:	我不上去，請你下來，好不好？	I am not going up there, please come down here. How about it?
A:	不行，yīnwèi 我有dyǎn兒要jǐn的事，你上來，行不行？	No, I can't, because I have some important business to do. How about your coming up here?

	B:	我在這兒也有 hěn 要jǐn的事ching, 請你下來行不行?	I have some important business here too. How about your coming down here please?
2.	A:	Gāu 先生, 請你 bǎ 我的 jwō子 bānjìn 來.	Please move in my table, Mr. Gāu.
	B:	我沒 gūngfu tì 你 bānjìn 去, yīnwèi 我要 gen 小 hái子 一kwài兒 wán兒.	I don't have the time to move it in for you, because I want to play with the children.
	A:	你 kwài dyǎn兒 bānjìn 來.	Hurry and move it in.
	B:	我 一hwěi兒 tì 你 bānjìn 去 bǎ.	Let me move it in for you in a moment.
	A:	不行, 我 syàn在要, kwài dyǎn兒 bānjìn 來.	No, it won't do. I want it now. Hurry and move it in.
	B:	你太不 kèchi, 我不tì 你 bānjìn 去.	I won't move it in for you; you are too rude.
	A:	好. Láujyà 請 nín tì 我 bǎ jwō子 bānjìn 來, 我 syèsyè nín.	Okay. Pardon me. Please move in my table for me. Thank you.

B: 好，我 tì nin bānjìn 去.	Okay. I will move it in for you.
3. A: Bái 先生，你天天從 sywésyàu 走回去麽?	Mr. Bái, do you walk home from school everyday?
B: 我不天天從 sywésyàu 走回去. 有 shŕhou 坐 gūnggùng chì 車回去.	I don't walk home everyday from school. Sometimes I take the bus to return home.
A: Wèi 甚麽有 shŕhou 走回去，有 shŕhou 坐 gūnggùng chì 車回去?	Why do you sometimes walk home and other times take the bus?
B: Shr̀ching 不太 máng 的 shŕhou jyòu 走回去; jyāu 書 jyāu 的 hěnlèi 的 shŕhou jyòu 坐 gūnggùng chì 車回去.	I walk home when I am not too busy; when I'm very tired from teaching, I take the bus home.
A: 你 syàn 在要到那兒去?	Where are you going now?
B: 要上 jye 去，你可以不可以 bǎ 我 dài 去?	I want to go shopping, can you take me along?
A: 我可以 bǎ 你 dài 去，你 dzěn 麽回來?	I can take you along, but how are you going to come back?

	B:	我可以走回來.	I can walk back.
4.	A:	你甚麼 shŕhou bǎ 那sye chì車買jìn來的?	When did you buy those cars?
	B:	我是上月 bǎ 那sye chì車買jìn來的. 下月 jyòu 賣chū去.	I bought them last month. I'll sell them next month.
	A:	多少錢買jìn來的? 賣chū去你要多少錢?	How much did you pay? How much will you sell them for?
	B:	一萬kwài錢買jìn來的. 有人 gěi 一萬二我 jyòu 買chū去.	They cost me ten thousand dollars. If some one should offer me twelve thousand dollars, I would sell them.
	A:	你 jēn hwèi 作買賣.	You really know how to do business.
5.	A:	他在那兒jànje ne?	Where is he standing?
	B:	在jwō子前頭 jànje ne.	He is standing in front of the table.
	A:	你在那兒坐je ne?	Where are you sitting?

	B:	在 jwō子後頭坐je ne.	I am sitting behind the table.
	A:	他兒子在那兒jànje ne?	Where is his son standing?
	B:	在wū子外頭jànje ne.	He is standing outside the room.
	A:	他女兒在那兒坐je ne?	Where is his daughter sitting?
	B:	在wū子外頭坐je ne.	She is sitting outside the room.
6.	A:	他們兩個人作甚麼ne?	What are the two of them doing?
	B:	他們兩個人jànje tán話ne.	The two of them are standing talking.
	A:	不dwèi. 一個jànje tán話, 一個坐je tán話.	You are wrong. One is talking standing up and the other is sitting down.
	B:	那兩個hái子dōu jànje chàngge兒ma?	Are those two children standing singing?
	A:	一個jànje chànggē兒, 一個坐je chànggē兒.	One is standing singing and the other is singing, sitting down.

7.	A: 你 bǎ 甚麼東西 bān 回來了 ?	What have you moved back here?
	B: 我 bǎ 我們的 jwō子 bān 回來了.	I have moved our table back here.
	A: 從那兒 bān 回來的 ?	From where did you move it back here?
	B: 從 Lǐ 上 shr̀ 那兒 bān 回來的.	I moved it back here from SFC Lǐ's place.
	A: 你 hái bǎ 甚麼東西 bān 回來了 ?	What else did you move back here?
	B: 他的 yǐ子.	His chair.
	A: 你甚麼 shŕhou gěi 他 bān 回去 ?	When are you going to move it back there for him?
	B: 我明天早上 gěi 他 bān 回去.	Tomorrow morning, I will move it back there for him.

II. Basic Dialogue

1.	**Lĭ:**	Bái 小jye, nín 頭上 dàije的 那個 màu子 jēn好kàn.	The hat you are wearing (on your head) is very good looking, Miss Bái.
	Bái:	是 syīn màu子; 是 我 男朋友 gĕi 我 買的.	It is a new hat; my boy friend bought it for me.
	Lĭ:	Bái 小jye, 我有 一dyăn兒 事請 nín bāngmáng.	There is something for which I need your help, Miss Bái.
	Bái:	我可以 bāng 你 甚麼 máng?	What can I help you with?
	Lĭ:	請 nín bāngju 我 bă 這 jĭ本書 náchĭ來.	Please help me to pick up these few books.
	Bái:	那 jĭ本書?	Which few books?
	Lĭ:	在地下 那 jĭ本 書.	Those few books on the floor.
	Bái:	可是我 shŏu裡 náje 書 ne.	But I am holding some books in my hands.
	Lĭ:	Nín 先 bă nín的書 fàng下.	First put down your books.

L. 29

	Bái:	Fàng 在 甚麼 地方?	Where shall I put them?
	Lǐ:	Fàng 在 地下.	Put them down on the floor.
	Bái:	好, 我 先 bǎ 我 的 書 fàng 下去.	Okay. I will first put my books down.
	Lǐ:	Syèsyè.	Thank you.
	Bái:	Nín 這 jǐ 本 書 是 從 Běipíng dàichū 來 的 麼?	Are these books of yours that you brought here from Běipíng?
	Lǐ:	不 是 從 Běipíng, 是 從 Táiwān dài 到 這兒 來 的.	They were brought here, not from Běipíng, but from Taiwan.
2.	A:	這 是 甚麼 chyāng?	What small arm is this?
	B:	這 是 chīngjīchyāng.	This is a light machine gun.
	A:	那 也 是 chīngjīchyāng 麼?	Is that also a light machine gun?
	B:	不是, 那 是 jùngjīchyāng.	No, it isn't. It is a heavy machine gun.
	A:	你 hwèi fàng jīgwanchyāng 麼?	Do you know how to fire a machine gun?

B:	Dwei 了. Chīngjīchyāng jùngjīchyāng 我 dōu hwèi fàng.	Right, I can fire both the light and the heavy machine guns.
A:	昨天 這個 shŕhou 你 jèng 在 作 je 甚麼 ne?	What were you doing at this time yesterday?
B:	昨天 這個 shŕhou 我 jèng 在 fàngje chyāng ne.	I was practicing firing at this time yesterday.

L. 29

Vocabulary

16.	bāng(jù)	幫(助)	V:	help (someone)
17.	bāngmáng	幫忙	VO:	render assistance
18.	chǐlai	起來	V:	rise, get up
18.1	-chǐlai	起來	P:	(verb suffix, indicating upward direction)
19.	chīng	輕	SV:	be light
19.1	chīngjīchyāng	輕機槍	N:	light machine gun
20.	dài	帶	V:	take or bring along
21.	dìsya	地下	N:	ground, floor
22.	fàng	放	V:	let go of; put, place; shoot, fire
22.1	fàngsyàchyu	放下去	V:	put down (there)
22.2	fàngsyàlai	放下來	V:	put down (here)
23.	-je	着	P:	(verb suffix, indicating continuance)
24.	jèngdzài	正在	A:	just in the midst of
25.	jùng	重	SV:	be heavy
25.1	jùngjīchyāng	重機槍	N:	heavy machine gun
26.	ná	拿	V:	take hold of; take, carry (small articles)
27.	shǒu	手	N:	hand
28.	tóu	頭	N:	head

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Compound Verbs as Suffix

Verbs compounded with lái or chyù serve not only as main verbs (as shown in Lesson 26), but they in turn may be suffixed to certain other verbs, such as ná (take), dài (take along), bān (move), dzǒu (walk), pǎu (run), etc.

Verbs compounded with lái or chyù are as follows:

shànglai	come up	shàngchyu	go up
syàlai	come down	syàchyu	go down;continue
jìnlai	come in	jìnchyu	go in
chūlai	come out	chūchyu	go out
hwéilai	come back	hwéichyu	go back
chǐlai	get up		

1.1 Verbs suffixed with compounded verbs are as follows:

bānshànglai	move up here	bānshàngchyu	move up there
bānsyàlai	move down here	bānsyàchyu	move down there
bānjìnlai	move in here	bānjìnchyu	move in there
bānchūlai	move out here	bānchūchyu	move out there
bānhwéilai	move back here	bānhwéichyu	move back there
bānchǐlai	move up		

Ná (take) or fàng (place, put) may substitute for bān in the above compound verbs.

pǎushànglai	run up here	pǎushàngchyu	run up there
pǎusyàlai	run down here	pǎusyàchyu	run down there
pǎujìnlai	run in here	pǎujìnchyu	run in there
pǎuchūlai	run out here	pǎuchūchyu	run out there
pǎuhwéilai	run back here	pǎuhwéichyu	run back there

Dzǒu (walk), sùng (deliver), kāi (drive), dài (take along) may substitute for pǎu in the above compound verbs.

Wǒmen dzǒushàngchyule; háidz pǎushàngchyule.	We walked up there and the children ran up there.
Chǐng nǐ bǎ shū fàngsyà.	Please put the book down.
Shéi bǎ chyán náchǐlaile?	Who has picked up the money?
shwōchūlai	give out information by talking
syěchūlai	write out
kànchūlai	make out by looking
tīngchūlai	make out by listening
mǎijìnlai	buy
màichūchyu	sell
chīsyàchyu	eat
hēsyàchyu	drink
chwānchǐlai	put on (clothes)
dàishàngchyu	put on (hat)
Chǐng nǐ syěchūlai.	Please write it out.
Tā màichūchyule yíge chìchē; mǎijìnlaile yíge fángdz.	He sold a car and bought a house.
Wáng Syáujye bǎ màudz dàishàngchyule jyou dzǒule.	Miss Wáng put on a hat and left.
Syǎuháidz bǎ yīshang chwānchǐlaile jyòu pǎuchūchyule.	The child put on clothes and ran out.

1.2 The suffix syàchyu adds the meaning of to keep on.

shwōsyàchyu	keep on talking

Syě (write), dzwò (do, make), kàn (look), chàng (sing), tīng (listen), wèn (ask) may be used with syàchyu.

1.3 When a specific place is indicated, these combinations split up and the place noun is inserted just before the final lái or chyù.

Tā bǎ yǐdz dōu bānjìnlai le.	He has moved all the chairs in.
Tā bǎ yǐdz dōu bānjin fàntīngli láile.	He has moved all the chairs into the dining room.
Tā pǎuhwéichyu le.	He has run back.
Tā pǎuhwei jyā chyule.	He has run back home.
Bǎ jèiben shū náhwéichyu.	Take this book back.
Bǎ jèiben shū náhwei sywésyàu chyu.	Take this book back to the school.

Translate the following:

1) He took out a chair and moved in a table.
2) He took out a book, and brought back two books.
3) Three men walked into this restaurant, and one man went out of this restaurant.

4) The children have all run outside; please ask them to come back.

5) Yesterday he drove away a car, and today he has driven it back here.

6) Bring the table into the dining room.

2. Continuance with Verb -je

The addition of the particle -je to a limited number of verbs indicates that the action of the verb continues. Jèngdzài (just in the midst of) or ne (suffix indicating continuance of action) or both may be used to emphasize the fact that the action is still going on.

Tā kànje shū ne.	He is reading.
Tā jèngdzài kànje shū ne.	He is in the midst of reading.
Wǒ syěje dž ne.	I am writing.
Wǒ jèngdzài syěje dž ne.	I am in the midst of writing.
Tā shwōje hwà ne.	He is talking.
Tā jèngdzài shwōje hwà ne.	He is in the midst of talking.

Verbs with -je also serve adverbially to describe the manner in which the action of the main verb is carried out. The main verbs follow the verbs with -je.

Wǒ dzwòje nyànshū.	I read sitting down.

Tā jànje shwōhwà.	He talks standing.
Tāmen dzǒuje shwōhwà.	They talk while walking.

Translate the following:

1) I can't talk because I am driving.
2) The children don't want to eat; they are in the midst of playing.
3) I can't come, because I am in the midst of eating.
4) He talks while he is writing.
5) Let us talk while we walk.
6) He eats while reading the newspapers.
7) He reads while he is smoking.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Verb Compounded with lái or chyù

請你上來. (上去) Please come up.(go up)

Examples:

1) 請你下來. (下去) Please come down. (go down)

2) 我要你明天 bǎ 書 dài 來. I want you to bring the book tomorrow.

Exercise:

a. Fill the following blanks with any of the compound verbs on the right.

come in	come out
go in	go out
go up	go down
go back	

1) Nǐ ywànyi...........ma?

2) Nǐmen dōu..........ba.

3) Chǐng nǐ...............

4) Wǒ yàu................

5) Páijǎng shwō nǐ děi...........

b. Say the following out loud and render it into English orally:

1) Chǐng nǐ bǎ chē kāilai. (kāichyu)

2) Nǐ chyù bǎ tāmen jyēlai, hǎu buhǎu?

3) Nǐ méi bǎ byǎu nálai ma? (náchyu)

4) Tā bǎ bǐ sùngchyule. (sùnglai)

5) Wǒ gēn tā shwō chǐng tā míngtyan bǎ shū dàilai.

c. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) He wants to go up.

2) Please come down quickly.

3) He went inside.

4) Do not go in. Ask him to come out.

5) Do you want to come up?

Pattern 2

Verbs suffixed with Compound Verbs

A: 他們 pǎu 上去了. They have run up.

Examples:

1) 他們走上去了. They have walked up.

2) 他們 bǎ 車 kāi 上去了. They have driven the car up.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Have you delivered the book up there?

2) They have taken everything up there.

3) Can you move my books down here?

4) Who put the letter up there?

5) Your brother told me to move in here.

B: 請你念 chū 來. Please read it out loud.

Examples:

1) 我寫 chū 來了. I have written (taken) it down.

2) 你 kwài 說 chū 來 ba. Please tell me quickly.

Exercise:

Say the following and render it into English orally:

1) Wǒ wènchulái le.

2) Nǐ hwà chulái, wǒ jyòu dǔngle.

3) Chǐng nǐ yùng Jūnggwodż syěchulái, hǎu buhǎu?

4) Tā yǐjing shwōchulái le. Nǐ búbǐ dzài wèn le.

5) Nǐ nyànchulái, wǒ tīngting.

C: 我 tīng chu 來了. I have figured it out (by listening) already.

Examples:

1) 你kàn chu 來了麼? 他是不是 王先生? Have you made out (by looking) whether it is Mr. Wang or not?

2) 我 tīng 不 chu 來. I can't make out (what he said).

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Can you make out what it is by looking from here?

2) I can make out whether it is fish or not by eating a little bit of it.

3) I cannot make out who is speaking there by listening.

4) He ate all the candy but did not make out that the candy was spoiled.

5) I looked at it over and over and still could not make out which one was mine.

D: 不要 吃下去. Do not swallow it.

Example:

1) 那個小 hái兒 bǎ 甚麼吃下去了? What has the child swallowed?

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) He cannot drink up three glasses of water.

2) If the food does not taste good, he cannot swallow it.

3) The child swallowed the candy I gave him.

4) Did you swallow it?

5) She said she swallowed it, but she did not.

E: 我們*買jin 來了十個 chì 車. We bought ten cars.
*(also 買了)

Example:

1) 我們*賣 chu 去了五個 jwō 子. We have sold five tables.
*(also 賣了)

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Which car salesman said he sold out all his cars?

2) He asked me to sell out his old car so he can buy a new one.

3) That book store sold out all the books it had in one week.

4) What have you sold this morning?

5) All the meat in that store has been sold out.

F: The suffix syàchyu means "to keep on" when used with these verbs: syě, wèn, dzwò, kàn, chàng, tīng, shwō.

Examples:

1) 我不 syǐhwǎn tīng. 請你不要 dzài 說下去了. I don't like to hear it. Please do not continue.

2) 你 kàn 下去 jyòu jr̄dau 了. You will know it if you keep on looking.

3) Dzài wèn 下去 他也不 hwèi gàusu 你.	He would not tell you even if you questioned him further.
4) 他不 ywànyi chàng下去了	He is not willing to keep on singing.
5) 我不 néng tīng 下去了. 我 děi 走了.	I cannot keep on listening. I must go.
6) 他不要我寫下去了.	He does not want me to keep on writing.
7) 他 dzěn 麼 不 dzài 那兒作下去了?	Why doesn't he continue working there?

Exercise:

Use the above verbs in sentences according to the way they were used in the examples.

Pattern 3

Continuance with verb-je

A: 他 kànje 書 ne.	He is in the midst of reading a book.

Examples:

1) 他 (jèng 在) 寫 je 字 ne.	He is in the midst of writing.
2) 他 (jèng 在) 說 je 話 ne..	He is in the midst of talking.
3) 我們 (jèng 在) 吃 je 飯 ne.	We are in the midst of having our meal.
4) 那個人 (jèng在) kànje bàu ne.	That man is in the midst of reading the newspaper.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) His father is reading the newspaper.

2) The children are playing outside.

3) Whom is he talking with?

4) I was reading this book when he came in.

5) Was she writing a letter when you saw her?

6) He is holding a book in his hand.

7) My friend is waiting for me in school.

B: 他坐je寫字.	He writes while he sits.
Examples:	
1) 他 jànje 吃飯.	He eats while standing.
2) 我們 kànje bàu 吃飯.	We eat while reading the newspaper.
3) 他們走 je 說話.	They talk while walking.
4) 那個 hái子 pǎuje chànggē 兒.	That child sings while running.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) He talks while he is driving.

2) Are they still standing there talking?

3) We may sit down to chat.

4) He eats while reading the newspapers.

5) He smokes while he is reading.

Homework

A. Read the following story out loud several times:

Jīntyan syàwǔ dàude hwǒchēshang yǒu hěn dwō lùjyūnde dūngsyi. Yǒu jīgwānchyāng, kǎbīnchyāng, jànchē, jànfángpàu, gāushèpàu, pàudàn, dzàijùngchē, shānpàu, yějànpàu. Chējàn chyántou hòutou dōu shr bīng. Tāmen dōu hěn máng. Yǒude bǎ yějànpàu bāndau dìsya, yǒude bǎ kǎbīnchyāng bāndau dzàijùngchēshang. Yǒu lyǎngge lyánjǎng jàndzai gāujwōdzshàngtou, gàusu jǐge páijǎng dzěmma bān, páijǎng dzài gàusu bīng dzěmma bān gēn bǎ shémma bāndau shémma dìfang. Tāmen bānde hěn kwài. Tāmen bānwánle. Yǒude bīng dzwò hwǒchē dzǒule, yǒude bīng kāi dzàijùngchē dzǒule.

B. Answer the following questions:

1) Hwǒchē shémma shŕhou dàude?
2) Hwǒchēshang yǒu shémma?
3) Shéi jàndzai gāujwōdzshàngtou?
4) Wèishémma jàndzai nèr?
5) Shéi bān dūngsyi?
6) Tāmen bānwánle dzwò shémma dzǒule?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos. 112-119)

112. 因	yīn	BF:	because (of), for	因為	- because
113. 為	wèi	BF:	for; to be, to do	為甚麼	- why
为					- because
114. 别	byé	BF: AV:	other don't (imperative, from 不要)	别人	- others
				别的	- other .....
				别去	- don't go
				别走	- don't leave
115. 件	jyàn	M:	(for article, piece, item)	兩件事ching	- two things (in the sense of event)
				四件東西	- four things (in the sense of articles)
116. 衣	yī	BF:	clothes	衣shang	- clothes
117. 定	dìng	BF:	certainly	一定	- certainly, insist
118. 很	hěn	A:	very	很好	- very good, very well
				很好看	- very beautiful
				很多	- great many, very much

L. 29

119. 貴 gwèi SV: be expensive
BF: honorable

不太貴 - not too expensive

jēn 貴 - really expensive

貴 syìng? - your (honorable) (sur) name?

B. Sentences

1. 請你別 bǎ 這件衣 shang fàng在地下.
2. 為甚麼小王沒 bǎ 那四件東西 bān 上來?
3. 因為他的頭很大，我想他一定很 tsūng明.
4. 那位外 gwo 小 jye jèng坐在那兒寫字 ne.
5. 男 hái 子不一定 dōu néng 作事，女hái-子不一定 dōu ài 說話.
6. 這位老太太 shóu 裡為甚麼 cháng náje 五分錢?
7. 我太太一定又買了很貴的衣shang，因為今天他 dwèi 我很好.
8. 他又要我走到 lóu 下去 gěi 他 ná

dyǎn 兒水 hē; 我說請你下去 hē ba.

9. 昨天晚上老王又沒回來吃飯. 今天他 dzài 不回來我一定要 wèn 他為甚麼?

C. Story

王上 shr̀ syǐhwan 念書. 他 jù 在別人 jyā 裡頭. 那個 fáng 子很大. 所以 jù 在那兒的人很多.

他前頭的 wū 子裡頭 jùje 一位 Lǐ 先生. 他後頭的 wū 子裡頭 jùje 一位 Jāng 先生.

Lǐ 先生 ài chànggē 兒. Jāng 先生 ài 請別人 hējyǒu, 所以, 王上 shr̀ 天天不 néng 念書.

有一天王上 shr̀ dwèi 那兩位說:「我 jr̄dau chàngge 兒 gēn hējyǒu dōu 很有 yìsz; 可是 dwèi 我念書 dōu 不太好. 所以,我想 sùnggěi 你們兩位一百 kwài 錢, hái 有兩件

L. 29

很貴的衣shang 請你們兩位 bānbān jyā, 行不行?

Jāng 先生說:「因為 syàn在 fáng子很nán jǎu 也 dōu 很貴, 所以我們 bānjya 很不 rúngyi.」

Lǐ 先生說:「因為我們 dōu 是好朋友, 請你 bǎ 衣shang gēn 錢 syàn在 dōu gěi 我們. 我們明天一定 bān.」

Dì 二天,他們兩個人 dōu bān 了. 可是 Jāng 先生 bān 到 Lǐ 先生 jù 的地方去了. Lǐ 先生 bān 到 Jāng 先生 jù 的地方去了.

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 71-75)

行 工 夫 早 晚

B. Radicals

1. 行 (go, do, 144) as the word: 行

2. 工 (work 48) as the word: 工

3. 大 (great, 37) as in: 夫

4. 日 (sun, 72) as in: 早, 晚

LESSON 30

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	我昨天有錢, 今天沒錢了.	I had some money yesterday, but I don't have any today.
	B:	你要用錢麼? 可是我也沒錢了.	Do you need some money? But I don't have any either.
	A:	你 néng 不 néng bǎ 你的 jwō子 gěi 我? 我可以去賣去.	Can you give me your table? I can sell it.
	B:	我的 jwō子也沒有了.	I don't have a table anymore.
	A:	你可以 bǎ 你 hái子的錢 gěi 我麼?	Can you give me your children's money?
	B:	我的 hái子 dōu 大了. 我不 néng 用他們的錢了.	My children have grown up. I can't use their money anymore.
	A:	我想你 didi 一定有錢, 因為他 hái 沒太太 ne.	I think your younger brother certainly has money, because he hasn't got a wife yet.

B: 他也沒錢了, 因為他 syàn 在有太太了.	He doesn't have money, because he has a wife now.
2. A: Dì 一 tsž 你吃中 gwó 飯的 shŕhou, 你 syǐhwan 吃麼?	Did you like Chinese food the first time you had it?
B: Dì 一 tsž 我吃中 gwó 飯的 shŕhou, 我不 syǐhwan.	I didn't like it the first time I had Chinese food.
A: Dì 二 tsž 你吃中 gwó 飯的 shŕhou, 你 syǐhwan 麼?	Did you like Chinese food the second time you had it?
B: Dì 二回我也不太 syǐhwan.	I didn't like it too well either the second time.
A: Dì 二回吃中 gwó 飯, 你是在甚麼地方吃的?	Where did you have Chinese food for the second time?
B: Dì 二回是在日本吃的.	I had it for the second time in Japan.
A: 那 tsž 是你 dì 一 tsž 到日本去的麼?	Was that your first trip to Japan?

B: 是 dì 二回. Dì 一回是在一九四五年. Dì 二回是在一九五二年.	That was the second trip. The first trip was in 1945, and the second trip in 1952.
A: 你 dì 一 tsz̀ 去的 shŕhou, 你 hwèi 說日本話麼?	When you made your first trip to Japan, could you speak Japanese?
B: 不 hwèi, syàn 在我 hwèi 說 jǐjyù 了.	No, I couldn't. Now I can speak a few sentences.
A: 你一 gùng 到日本去了 jǐtsz?	How many times have you been to Japan?
B: 我一 gùng 到日本去了兩 tsz.	I went to Japan two times.
A: 你那兩 tsz̀ 一 gùng jù 了 jǐ 年?	How many years did you stay on those two trips?
B: 那兩 tsz̀ 一 gùng jù 了八年.	I stayed a total of eight years on those two trips.
A: 你在日本的 shŕhou 吃了 jǐtsz̀ 日本飯?	How many times did you have Japanese food in Japan?

B: Dì一回我吃了三tsz̀日本飯. Dì二回吃了八tsz̀日本飯.	I ate Japanese food three times during my first trip, and eight times during my second trip.
A: 你頭一tsz̀到日本去的shŕhou, 你坐fēijī去的麼?	When you made your first trip to Japan, did you go by airplane?
B: 我頭一tsz̀去的shŕhou, 是坐chwán去的.	When I made my first trip, I went by boat.
A: 你頭一tsz̀吃日本飯的shŕhou, 是用kwài子吃的麼?	Did you use chopsticks when you had Japanese food for the first time?
B: 我頭五tsz̀吃日本飯的shŕhou, dōu是用chā子吃的.	I used forks for all the first five times I had Japanese food.
A: 你dì六tsz̀吃的shŕhou, 是用kwài子吃的麼?	Did you use chopsticks when you had Japanese food for the sixth time?

	B:	Dì 六 tsz̀ 吃 日本 飯的 shŕhou, 一半的 shŕhou 用 chā 子, 一半的 shŕhou 用 kwài 子.	I used forks for half of the time and chopsticks for half of the time when I had Japanese food for the sixth time.
	A:	你 在 日本 的 shŕhou, kàn 了 你 朋友 jǐtsz̀?	How many times did you visit your friends when you were in Japan?
	B:	我 kàn 了 我 朋友 四 tsz̀, kàn 了 我 dìdi 七 八 tsz̀.	I visited my friends four times, and visited my younger brother seven or eight times.
3.	A:	這本 書 頭 jǐkè nán 不 nán?	Are the first few lessons of this book difficult?
	B:	頭 jǐkè hěn nán.	The first few lessons are very difficult.
	A:	我說, 頭兩 kè nán, dì 三 kè jyòu 不 太 nán 了.	I would say that the first two lessons are difficult, but the third lesson isn't too difficult anymore.
	B:	Dì 十六 kè 也 hěn nán, 因為 有 寫字 了.	Lesson 16 is very difficult too, because there is writing.

L. 30

A:	頭五個字 hěn rúngyi 寫 bǎ.	The first five characters are easy to write, I suppose.
B:	頭三個字 hěn rúngyi 寫, 可是 dì 四個字 jyòu 不太 rúngyi 了.	The first three characters are easy to write, but the fourth character is not too easy anymore.
A:	頭一本書 rúngyi 麼?	Is the first book easy?
B:	頭一本 rúngyi, 因為没有中gwó 字.	The first book is easy because there are no Chinese characters in it.

II. Basic Dialogue

Bái:	Lǐ 先生, nín 為甚麼生 chì?	Why are you angry, Mr. Lǐ?
Lǐ:	我没生 chì.	I am not angry.
Bái:	可是 nín 不太 gāusyìng, 為甚麼?	But you aren't very happy, why?
Lǐ:	我兒子生 chì 了.	My son is angry.
Bái:	他在那兒 ne?	Where is he?
Lǐ:	在 chúfáng 裡頭.	In the kitchen.
Bái:	他 kū 了没 kū?	Did he cry?
Lǐ:	他 kū 了 jǐtsž 了, 因為他要吃 dyǎnsyin.	He has cried several times, because he wants to eat some cake.
Bái:	Lǐ 太太没 gěi 他麼?	Didn't Mrs. Lǐ give him any?
Lǐ:	這 tsž 没 gěi 他, 因為今天没有 dyǎnsyin 了.	She didn't give him any this time, because there aren't any cakes today.
Bái:	Nín měi 天 dōu 買 dyǎnsyin 麼?	Do you buy cakes every day?

L. 30

Lǐ:	Měi天 dōu 買 dyǎnsyin, 今天 賣 dyǎnsyin 的 pù子 沒有 dyǎnsyin 了.	Yes, we buy cakes every day, but today the pastry shop was out of cakes.
Bái:	Lǐ 太太 不作 dyǎnsyīn 麼?	Doesn't Mrs. Lǐ make cakes?
Lǐ:	從前要是 pù子 裡頭沒有 dyǎnsyin, Lǐ 太太 jyòu gěi 我們作 dyǎnsyin. 今天他 wàng了 作.	Before this Mrs. Lǐ had been making cakes whenever the pastry shop was out of them, but today she forgot to make some.
Bái:	Nín 兒子 jǐswèi 了?	How old is your son?
Lǐ:	五 swèi 了.	Five years old.
Bái:	從前他 cháng kū 麼?	Did he often cry before this time?
Lǐ:	他不 cháng kū. 有 bìng 的 shŕhou, 他有 shŕhou kū.	He doesn't often cry. He sometimes cries when he becomes sick.
Bái:	這是 nín 兒子 頭一回 沒有 dyǎnsyīn 吃麼?	Is this the first time that your son does not have cakes to eat.

Lǐ:	Dwèi了. 是頭一回. 所以他 kū了半天.	Right, this is the first time. Therefore he cried for a long time.
Bái:	Syàn在他 hái kūje 麼?	Is he still crying?
Lǐ:	他不kū了. 我們回到書fáng念 Yīng文去 bǎ.	No, he isn't crying anymore. Let us go back to the study to study English.
Bái:	這kè書多麼 rúngyi! Měijyù 話的 yìsz dōu hěn chīngchu.	How easy this lesson is! Every sentence is very clear in its meaning.
Lǐ:	你 dōu 明bai 麼?	Do you understand every sentence clearly?
Bái:	我 dōu 明bai.	I understand it clearly.
Lǐ:	你回jyā去念 ba.	You may go home and study it.

L. 30

Vocabulary

29.	chīngchu	清楚	SV:	be clear (in meaning)
30.	chúfáng	廚房	N:	kitchen
31.	dwó (or dwóma)	多 (多麼)	A:	how? to what degree?
32.	dyǎnsyin	點心	N:	light refreshments, snacks, cakes
33.	gāusyìng	高興	SV:	be happy, in high spirits
34.	-hwéi	回	M:	a time; occurrence
35.	kū	哭	V:	cry, cry about
36.	měi	每	NU:	each
37.	mingbai	明白	V:	understand (clearly)
38.	shēngchì	生氣	SV:	get angry, be angry
39.	-swèi	歲	M:	year(s) old
40.	tóu-	頭	P:	first (see III, note 3)
41.	tsúngchyán	從前	MA:	formerly
42.	-tsz̀	次	M:	a time occasion
43.	wàng	忘	V:	forget
44.	yǒubìng	有病	VO:	become sick

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Changed Status With -le

Another function of -le other than to show completion of action is to show a change of status. The addition of -le to a verb in its positive or negative form, leads to a changed condition or state of affairs or intention. When translated into English, additional words such as "become," "not any more," or "not any longer" sometimes are used.

Háidz dōu dàle.	The children are all grown up now.
Wǒ syàndzài hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà le.	Now I can speak Chinese.
Wǒ búyàule.	I don't want (it) anymore.
Dūngsyi dōu gwèile.	Everything has become expensive.
Wǒ tsúngchyán hwèi shwō Fàgwo hwà, syàndzài búhwèi shwōle	Once I could speak French. Now I can't speak it any longer.
Tā tsúngchyán méiyou chyán, syàndzài yǒuchyánle.	Once he was poor, but now he is rich.
Nǐ búbì láile.	You don't need to come anymore.

Translate the following:

1) I have had some refreshment, and I don't want anymore.

2) I didn't understand it yesterday, but I do now.

3) He was sick yesterday, and he is well now.

4) I bought a hat and no longer have any money.

5) I gave that child a piece of candy, and he is not crying any more.

6) Because you don't want to help him, he became angry.

7) I am tired and I don't want to play anymore.

2. Measures -tsz̀ and -hwéi

There are two ways to use the measures -tsz̀ and -hwéi: either as a time-when expression or as a time-spent expression. As a time-when expression, it refers to a specified occasion or occasions, and precedes the verb. As a time-spent expression, it refers to the frequency of occurrences, and comes after the verb.

2.1 As a time-when expression

Wǒ tóuyìhwéi chyù, tāmen hěn kèchi, wǒ jèihwéi chyù tāmen gēn wǒ shēngchìle.	The first time I went, they were very polite, when I went this time, they were angry with me.
Jèi shr̀ wǒ dìsāntsz̀ chr̄de Jūnggwo fàn.	This is the third time I have eaten Chinese food.

Wǒ měihwéi dàu Jyòujīnshān chyù, dōu chr̄ Jūnggwo fàn.	I eat Chinese food every time I go to San Francisco.
Wǒ dìyītsz̀ dàu Mèigwo lái de shŕhou, wǒ búhwèi shwō Yīngwén.	I didn't know how to speak English the first time I came to America.
Tā jèitsz̀ lái méidài màudz.	This time he came without wearing a hat.

2.2 As a time-spent expression

Tā dàu Jūnggwo chyùle lyǎngtsz̀.	He went to China twice.
Nǐ dàu Jyòujīnshān chyùle jǐhwéi le?	How many trips have you made to San Francisco?
Tā shwōle lyǎngsāntsz̀, kěshr̀ wǒ hái bùmíngbai.	He said it two or three times, but I still don't understand it clearly.
Chǐng nǐ dzài shwō yìhwéi.	Please repeat it once more.

EXCEPTION: When this object is a person or a place, the frequency expression stands after the object:

Wǒ tyāntyan shàngjyē lyǎng-sānhwéi.	I went downtown a couple of times everyday.
Chyùnyán tā lái kànle wǒmen sz̀tsz̀.	He came to see us four times last year.

L. 30

Translate the following:

1) He went to Běipíng three times.

2) The first time he went to Běipíng, I went with him.

3) That boy cried three times today.

4) I saw thatAmerican twice yesterday.

5) The first time I came to America in 1941 and the second time I came in 1949.

6) I went to San Francisco twice.

7) The first time I went to San Francisco I stayed in a hotel, and the second time I stayed in a friend's house.

3. Ordinalizing Prefixes dì- and tóu- Contrasted

The ordinalizing prefix dì- refers to any single unit of a series, tóu- refers to the first one or more units in the series.

dìyíge	the first one
tóuyíge	the first one
dìèrge	the second one
tóulyǎngge	the first two
dìchíge	the seventh one
tóuchíge	the first seven
dìshŕge	the tenth one
tóushŕge	the first ten

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Changed Status with le

A: 他們的 hái 子 dōu 大了. — Their children have all grown up.

subj + SV + le

Examples:

1) 王先生 syàn 在 老了. — Mr. Wang is now old.
2) 天 hēi 了. — It's dark already.
3) 飯 好了. — Dinner is ready.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) He is angry. Don't talk to him now.
2) They are all rich now.
3) Is that enough? It is enough.
4) She is already well.
5) This meat was spoiled when you bought it.

B: 他 hwèi 用 kwài 子 了. — He already knows how to use chopsticks.

Subj + AV + V + O + le

他父 chin 不 chōuyān 了. — His father is no longer smoking.

Subj + neg + V + O + le

Examples:

1) 我 hwèi kāi 車 了. — I already know how to drive a car.

2) 他不想去了.	He no longer wants to go.
3) 他們不要了.	They no longer want it.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Can he speak Chinese now?

2) He does not like to sing any more.

3) They don't live here any more.

4) He does not want to buy another new car any more.

5) When he was in China, he could speak a little Chinese. Now he still understands, but he cannot speak any more.

6) I do not like to eat candy any more.

7) He does not care to say any more.

Pattern 2

Stressing attendant circumstance with shr.....de

A: Stressing place

你的中國話是在 Mĕigwo sywé 的麼?	Was your Chinese learned in America?

Examples:

1) 他的書是在日本買的麼?	Was his book bought in Japan?
2) 你母chin是從Fàgwo來的麼?	Did your mother come from France?
3) Lĭ 先生是從 sywé-syàu來的.	It was from school that Mr. Li came.
4) 我是在火車jàn gēn 他說的.	It was at the railway station that I talked to him about it.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Where did you come from?

2) Where did he buy those books?

3) I ate the lunch at the bus station.

4) He bought his car in Germany.

5) My children were all born in this country.

B: Stressing time

你是昨天買的 bàu麽？	Was it yesterday that you bought the newspaper?

Examples:

1) 我是上lĭbai 吃的中gwo 飯.	It was last week that I ate Chinese food.
2) 你是甚麽 shŕhou 走的	When was it that you left?
3) 他是吃飯的 shŕhou 來的.	It was dinner time when he came.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) When did you go to his place?

2) He came to my house on Sunday.

3) My car was sold last year.

4) He came back to the States in 1945.

5) I saw him on Saturday, not Sunday.

C: Stressing conveyance

他是坐 chwán 到中 gwo 去的.	It was by boat that he went to China.

L. 30

Examples:

1) 你是不是坐fēijī來的 ?	Was it by plane that you came?
2) 他是坐朋友的chì車去的.	He went in a friend's car.
3) 他們 dōu 是坐fēijī到Nyǒuywè去的.	They all went to New York by plane.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) They went to England by plane.

2) Would you like to go to San Francisco with me by boat this Saturday?

3) We went there in a friend's car.

4) I went there by train and came back by airplane.

5) Did you come here by ship or by plane?

D: Stressing purpose

他是作買賣去的.	It was to do business that he went.

Examples:

1) 你是念書来的麼 ?	Did you come to study?
2) 他是 kàn 朋友去的.	It was to visit his friend that he went.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Why did he come here?

2) Did he come here to see us?

3) His brother went to France to study.

4) Last year he went to Germany to buy a car. I thought he went there to visit his girl friend.

5) Did you come to my house to read the newspapers or to visit me? If you came to visit me, you should stay a little while after reading the papers.

Pattern 3

Ordinalizing prefixes dì- and 頭- contrasted

dì 一個	the first one
dì 二個	the second one
dì 三個	the third one
頭一個	the first one
頭兩個	the first two
頭三個	the first three

Examples:

1) 這是他寫的 dì一本書.	This is the first book he wrote.
2) Sywé 中gwo話, 頭兩個 lǐbai 很 nán.	The first two weeks of learning Chinese are very difficult.
3) 我 kàn 了他寫的頭五本書 dōu很好.	I read the first five books that he wrote. They were all good.
4) 他不是 dì十個人. 他是 dì十一個人.	He isn't the tenth person. He is the eleventh person.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) The first man who came in was his brother.

2) The second man who talked to you was not our friend.

3) The first ten people will be given a watch apiece.

4) His first three books were not well written. His fourth one was better.

5) My sister has five children. This is her third child.

Homework

A. Read the following story out loud several times:

Syǎumèimei hwéidau jyāli, jìnle shūfáng bǎ mén gwānshang jyòu kūchiláile. Wǒ bù míngbai wèishémma. Wǒ dzài shūfáng wàitou wèn tā dzěmma le. Tā bù shwōhwà. Wǒ shwō mǔchin dzài chúfángli dzwò dyǎnsyīn le, nǐ chūlai chr̄ yìdyǎr ba. Tā hái bu shwōhwà. Wǒ bǎ mén kāikaile, shwō: "Dzěmma bù shwōhwà a? Gàusu wǒ shémma shr̀. Wǒ kéyi bāng nǐ máng." Tā shwō:"Wǒ bu shūfu. Búyàu chr̄ dyǎnsyīn yě bú ywànyi shwōhwà." Wǒ shwō: "Nǐ yídìng shr̀ shēngchìle. Shéi ràng nǐ shēngchìle? Gàusu wǒ." Děng le yìhwěr tā shwō: "Méiyourén ràng wǒ shēngchì, wǒ dzwótyān sywéde dz̀ jīntyān dōu wàngle. Syānsheng wèn wǒ, wǒ dōu bùjr̄dau. Wǒ jēn shēngchìjíle."

B. Answer the following questions:

1) Shéi shēngchì le?

2) Wèishémma?

3) Shéi dzài chúfáng lǐtou?

4) Shéi dzwòle dyǎnsyīn?

5) Syǎumèimei bù syǐhwan chr̄ dyǎnsyīn ma?

6) Shéi yàu bāng shéide máng?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos. 120-127)

120.	跑	pǎu	V:	run	跑出去	- run out (of the house)
					跑得很 kwài	- runs very fast
121.	路	lù	N:	road, route	走路	- to walk
122.	進	jìn	V:	enter (in)	進來	- come in
	(进)				進去	- go in
					進城	- go into the city
					bān 進來	- move (it) in
123.	出	chū	V:	exit (out)	出來	- come out
					出去	- go out
					出 mén	- go out (of the house)
124.	茶	chá	N:	tea	hē 茶	- drink tea
125.	城	chéng	N:	city	進城	- go into the city
					出城	- go out of the city
					城裡	- in the city
					城裡頭	- inside the city

L. 30

126. 遠 ywǎn SV: be far
遠
(远)
127. 近 jìn SV: be near

遠不遠? - is it far?
多麼遠? - how far?

很近 - very near
不太近 - not too near
近多了 - much nearer

B. Sentences

1. 王太太，你父母進城了麼?
2. 他們到城裡頭去了.
3. 這是他們頭一回進城麼?
4. 是的. 他們的老朋友請他們吃飯.
5. 從這個地方到城裡頭遠不遠?
6. 很近. 他們小的 shŕhou 在一 kwài 兒念書，寫字. 後來又在一 kwài 兒作事.
7. 他們這回請吃飯有甚麼事?
8. 有四位男朋友 gēn 兩位女朋友想到日本去作買賣.
9. 這 jǐ 位先生，小 jye 多大了?
10. 他們都很年 chīng.

11. 這是他們頭一 tsz̀ 作買賣.

12. 我也 gēn 他們去作買賣, 行不行?

13. 我不 jr̄dau, 請進來 tántan.

14. 王先生出去了麼?

15. 沒有. 他有 bìng, 他在裡頭ne, 請進來
hē dyǎn 兒茶.

16. Nín 的小 hái 子在 jyā 麼?

17. 他們 dōu 跑出去 wǎn 兒去了.

18. 王先生有甚麼 bìng?

19. 他沒 bìng, 他生 chì 了.

20. 他生 shéi 的 chì?

21. 他要我 gēn 他出去走一走. 我說我
不想走路, 他 jyòu 生 chì 了.

22. 我進去看看王先生行麼?

23. 别 kèchi. 你下 tsz̀ 來 dzài 看他 ba.

24. 你 syǐhwan hē 中 gwo 茶麼?

25. 我不 hē 茶, 可以 hē dyǎn 兒水.

26. 别 kèchi. 你看他那件衣 shang 好不好?

27. Jēn 好, 一定很貴 ba. 我想我 děi 走了.

28. Dzài 坐一 hwěi 兒. 你 jyā 很遠麼?

29. 不遠. 很近. 有工夫的 shŕhou 我 dzài 來.

30. 有工夫, 請 dzài 來.

C. Story

從前我 jyā 在 syāng 下. 那個 shŕhou 年 chīng, cháng 因為想到城裡的茶 gwǎn 兒去 hē 茶, 跑很遠的路進城. 那 syē 路很不好走. 一天跑三四回也不 lèi. Syàn 在我很不 syǐhwan 出 mén. 遠的地方不要去, 近的地方也不要去, jēn 不明 bái 為甚麼. 我想我一定是老了.

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 76-80)

昨 今 明 年 錢

B. Radicals

1. 日 (sun, 72) as in: 昨, 明

2. 人 (man, 9) as in: 今

3. 干 (shield, 51) as in: 年

4. 金 (metal, 167) as in: 錢

L. 30
C. Dictionary Drill

Sixth Common Chinese Radicals - "Animal" Group

Radical Number	Name	Radical	English Meaning	Examples
93	niú	牛 牛	Ox	物 牲 犀
94	ch'üǎn-yú-erh	犭 犬	Dog	狗 獸 獅
142	ch'úng	虫	Insect	蚊 蜜 蝕
187	mǎ	馬	Horse	騎 馮 驚
195	yǘ	魚	Fish	鮮 魯
196	niǎo	鳥	Bird	鴨 鳳

1. **Exercise:** Find from the dictionary Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
牯			犯		
驗			鸞		
鵝			鱗		
鯉			鯨		
鷹			牟		
蛾			駕		
猛			鰲		
虹			鴻		
獻			蟹		

2. Home Work: Find from the dictionary Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
牝			哄		
驕			牲		
獲			蚊		
蚌			蝨		
鳩			馳		
牢			犧		
狂			騾		
猴			鯊		
獸			鶯		

LESSON 31

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	Lĭ先生 kwài 來了.	Mr. Lĭ will be here soon.
	B:	是的. 我們 dĕi 進去了.	Yes, we have to go in.
	A:	Shŕhou 到了, 我們 dĕi 上 kè 了.	It is time for us to attend class.
	B:	Dwèi 了, dĕi 上 kè 了.	That's right. We have to go to class.
2.	A:	我們要下 kè 了麼?	Is the class about to be over?
	B:	Dwèi 了, 要下 kè 了. 我也 lèi 了.	Right, the class is about over, and I am tired too.
	A:	下 kè 了. 我們 dōu dĕi 走了.	The class is over. We all have to go.
	B:	我們 dōu 要回 jyā 了.	All of us are going home.
	A:	你要做甚麼去?	What are you going to do?
	B:	我太太要做飯了, 我 dĕi dài hái 子出去 wán 兒.	My wife is going to prepare food, and I have to take the children out to play.

3.	A:	我們要吃飯了.	We are about to eat now.
	B:	為甚麼?	Why?
	A:	我們děi kwài dyǎn兒到火車jàn去.	We have to go to the station in a hurry.
	B:	為甚麼děi kwài 一dyǎn兒到火車jàn去?	Why do we have to go to the station in a hurry?
	A:	因為火車kwài kāi了.	Because the train will leave soon.
	B:	要是火車kwài kāi了, 我們jyòu děi走了. 我們不bì吃飯了.	If the train is going to leave soon, we must be going. We don't need to eat.
4.	A:	你jyā裡人dōu好麼?	Are all your folks well and fine?
	B:	我hái子有bìng.	My child is sick.
	A:	Bìng了jǐ天了?	How many days has he been sick?
	B:	Bìng了兩天了.	For two days already.
	A:	Kwài好了ba?	Probably he will be well soon?

	B:	一兩天 jyòu 好了.	He will be well in a couple of days.
5.	A:	Nín 到那兒去了?	Where did you go?
	B:	我在外頭 走了一走.	I took a walk outside.
	A:	Nín kàn bàu 了麼?	Did you read the newspaper?
	B:	我 kàn 了一kàn, 沒甚麼大事.	I took a look at the newspaper, but there is nothing important.
	A:	Nín 念書了麼?	Did you study?
	B:	我念了一念, 沒 dōu dǔng.	Yes, I studied for a while, but I didn't understand all of it.
	A:	那 kè 書的字 nín 寫了麼?	Did you write the characters in that lesson?
	B:	我寫了一寫, 可是寫的不太好.	I wrote a little, but not too good.
	A:	明天我請 nín gēn nín 太太吃飯. 你們 néng 來麼?	I want to have you and your wife come for dinner tomorrow. Can you come?

L. 31

	B:	我 gēn 我太太 說了. 昨天 晚上 他說 他 děi 想想.	I told my wife. Last night she said that she had to think it over.
	A:	今天 早上 他說 甚麼?	What did she say this morning?
	B:	他 說 他 hái 不jr̄dau néng 來 不 néng.	She said that she still didn't know whether we could come or not.
	A:	為甚麼?	Why?
	B:	因為jyā 裡頭 hái 有 dyǎn 兒 事.	There is still something we have to do at home.
6.	A:	Nín 兒子 為甚麼 kū?	Why is your son crying?
	B:	他 jyòu 是 ài kū, 也 不jr̄dau 為甚麼.	He just likes to cry, and I don't know why.
	A:	他 為甚麼 不syǐhwan 吃 這個 dyǎnsyin?	Why doesn't he like to eat this piece of cake?
	B:	他 jyòu 是 不syǐhwan 吃 這個 dyǎnsyin.	He just doesn't like to eat this piece of cake.
	A:	Nín 今天 為甚麼 不syǐhwan 念書?	Why don't you like to study today?

	B:	不 jr̄dau 為甚麼 jyòu 是 不 syǐhwǎn.	I don't know why. I just don't like to study.
7.	A:	Nǐn syǐhwan 吃 yú 麼?	Do you like to eat fish?
	B:	我 jyòu 是 不 syǐhwan 吃 yú.	I just don't like to eat fish.
	A:	要是 我 請你, 你 hái 是 不 syǐhwan 吃 麼?	If I invite you to eat fish, would you still dislike it?
	B:	我 hái 是 不 syǐhwan.	I would still dislike it.

II. Basic Dialogue

1. Lǐ:	Bái 小 jye, nín 昨天 dzěn麼 沒來?	Why didn't you come yesterday, Miss Bái?
Bái:	昨天 我 bìng 了.	I was sick yesterday.
Lǐ:	Nín dzěn麼 bìng 了?	Why were you sick?
Bái:	我 想 我 吃的 東西 不大 好.	I think the food I ate wasn't very good.
Lǐ:	一定 很 不 shūfu ba?	You felt pretty bad, didn't you?
Bái:	昨天 早上 我 吃 了 早飯, lìkè jyòu 不大 shūfu.	I didn't feel too well right after I had my breakfast yesterday.
Lǐ:	Nín 父母 jr̄dau 麼?	Did your parents know?
Bái:	他們 dōu jr̄dau.	Yes, they did.
Lǐ:	你們 沒在 一kwài兒 吃早飯 麼?	Didn't you eat breakfast together?
Bái:	沒有. 因為 我 父母 要出去, 所以 他們 先 吃的.	No, we didn't. My parents wanted to go out, therefore they ate first.

2. **Lǐ:**	Nín 是 甚麼 bìng?	What was your illness?
Bái:	我們 dōu 不 jr̄dau.	None of us knew.
Lǐ:	Nín 父chin 說 甚麼?	What did your father say?
Bái:	他 kàn了一kàn. 他 說 甚麼 我 沒 tīngjyàn.	He looked at me. I didn't catch what he said.
Lǐ:	Nín 母chin 說 甚麼?	What did your mother say?
Bái:	他 沒 說 甚麼. 他 kànjyan 我 不shūfu, 他 也 不shūfu 了.	She didn't say anything. She took ill too after she saw that I was sick.
Lǐ:	Nín 吃了甚麼 hwài了的 東西 麼?	Did you have any food that was spoiled?
Bái:	我 想了一想, 吃的 yú 是 hwài了的.	After thinking about it, I knew that the fish was spoiled.
Lǐ:	Yú dzěn 麼 hwài 了?	How come the fish was spoiled?
Bái:	買了 jǐ天 沒吃, jyou hwài 了.	It was spoiled because it was bought several days before eating.
Lǐ:	Nín 吃的shŕhou 不jr̄dau 麼?	Didn't you know that when you ate it?
Bái:	我 wàng 了.	I forgot it.

3. Lǐ:	Nín syàn 在 好了麼?	Are you well now?
Bái:	好 一dyǎn兒了.	Yes, I am a little better now.
Lǐ:	這kè 書 nín 念了沒有?	Did you read this lesson?
Bái:	我今天早上 念了一念. 不太 nán.	I read it this morning. It isn't very difficult.
Lǐ:	我們 念 dyǎn兒 書 ba. 你父chin kwài 來了.	Let us study a little bit. Your father is coming soon.
Bái:	好. 念了書，我也 děi 走了. 我 hái是 不大 shūfu.	All right. After studying I have to leave too. I still don't feel very well.

Vocabulary

45. bìng	病	N/SV:	sickness/be sick
45.1 bìngle	病了	V:	become sick
46. búdà	不大	A:	not very
47. dzěmma	怎麼	A:	why? how is it that?
47.1 dzěmma le	怎麼了	IE:	what happened? What's the matter?
48. hǎule	好了	SV/V:	be well again; it's ready, done
49. hwài	壞	SV:	be bad
49.1 búhwài	不壞	SV:	be not bad, pretty good
49.2 hwàile	壞了	V:	become spoiled, get out of order
50. jyòu	就	A:	at once
51. kànjyan	看見	V:	see
52. lìkè	立刻	A:	immediately
53. lyàng	輛	M:	(measure for cars)
54. shūfu	舒服	SV:	be comfortable
54.1 bùshūfu	不舒服	SV:	be uncomfortable; indisposed, not feel well
55. tīngjyan	聽見	V:	hear

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Imminent Action with -le

Generally speaking the addition of -le as verb suffix or sentence final indicates completion of action, but sometimes it has an entirely different meaning. The addition of -le to verbs modified by appropriate adverbs, such as kwài (soon), or certain auxiliary verbs, such as yàu (going to), indicates that the action has already been decided upon, and that it is expected to be completed at some time in the near future.

Lǐ Syānsheng kẁai dzǒule.	Mr. Lǐ is about to leave.
Lǐ Tàitai kwài hǎule.	Mrs. Lǐ is going to get well soon.
Tāmen yàu chr̄fàn le.	They are about to eat.
Tāmen jyòu yau dàule.	They are about to arrive.
Wǒmen děi dzǒule. Dzàijyàn ba!	We must be going. See you again!

Translate the following:

1) It is about time to attend class.
2) Mr. Jāng is about to go. Have you talked to him?
3) The car is about to be here.
4) We are all about to leave. You are coming with us, aren't you?
5) Please wait a while; Mrs. Jāng is about to arrive.
6) Let us go into the house. He will be here soon.
7) I am going to San Francisco. Is there anything you want me to buy for you?

2. Reduplicated verbs and completed action

It was noted in Lesson 18 that certain verbs are sometimes doubled. When completed action is indicated, the particle -le is attached to the first verb only.

Women dzài wàitou tánleyitán.	We had a chat outside.
Tā syǎnglesyǎng jyou bùshēngchìle.	He is no longer angry after he gave it a thought.
Wǒ kànlekàn nèilyàng chē, jyou mǎile.	I looked at that car for a while and bought it.
Tāde bǐ méiyǒule. Tā jǎulejǎu jyòu dzǒule.	His pen disappeared. He looked for it for a while then left.
Tā gēn wǒ sywélesywé yùng kwàidz.	He learned a little with me on how to use chopsticks.

Translate the following:

1) I played a little with the children.
2) After we talked a little, we went to a restaurant to eat.
3) He went to town to do a little shopping.
4) He studied a little, and went out.
5) He did a little writing of characters; then went to school.

3. Jyòushr serves to make the mood of the sentence more emphatic.

L. 31

The addition of *shr̀* to certain adverbs such as *jyòu* (just), *hái* (still), *jēn* (really), etc., serves to make them more emphatic.

Nèige syǎu háidz jēnshr tsūngming; tā jyòushr bùsyǐhwan nyànshū.	That child is really intelligent, but he just doesn't like to study.
Jyòushr nèige hǎu.	Only that one is good.
Háishr jèige hǎu.	After all this is better.
Nèige hǎu, yě pyányi, kěshr wǒ háishr bùsyǎng mǎi.	Although that is good and cheap, I still don't want to buy it.
Jèi jyòushr wǒ yàu mǎide nèilyàng chē.	This is the car that I want to buy.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Imminent action with le

A: 王先生 kwài 來了.	Mr.Wang is coming soon.

Examples:

1) 上 kè 的 shŕhou kwài 到了.	Class time is coming soon.
2) Chwán kwài kāi 了.	The boat is about to leave.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) It is about time to eat.

2) They are leaving soon.

3) He will be here soon.

4) She will be well soon.

5) The train will leave soon.

B: 王先生要走了.	Mr.Wang is about to leave.

Examples:

1) 我們要回去了.	We are about to go back.
2) 你們 jyòu 要上 kè 了麼?	Are you about to go to class?

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) I cannot wait. I will be leaving soon.

2) Time is up, we must be going.

3) It is getting late. We must be going home.

4) Don't go away. We are about to eat.

5) They will be coming to America soon.

C: 他們 dĕi 走了.	They have got to go soon.

Examples:

1) Dwèi 不chĭ, 我們dĕi 上 kè 了, dzàijyàn.	Sorry, we've got to go to class. See you again.
2) 天不早了,你們dĕi 去了.	It's getting late. You had better go.

Exercise:

a. Say the following and render it into English orally:

1) Páijăng yàu lái le, wŏmen dĕi jànchilaile.

2) Wŏmen dĕi shwèijyàu le. Nĭmen hwéijyā ba.

3) Wàitou dōu hēile, wŏmen dĕi jĭngchyule.

4) Wŏde bĭ hwàile, Wŏ dĕi măi bĭ le.

5) Chē kwài kāile, wŏmen dĕi shàngchē le.

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) It is getting late, I must be going home.

2) We must be going upstairs. They are waiting for us.

3) My wife is calling me. I must be going inside.

4) Our dinner is ready. We must be eating.

5) Our Platoon Leader is going to be here soon. Everyone must be getting busy.

Pattern 2

他 kàn 了kàn 那 jāng hwà兒, 没說話, jyòu走了.	He took a look at the picture, said nothing, and then left.

Examples:

1) 他吃了吃 jyòu 不要 吃了.	He took a bite, then didn't want to eat it anymore.
2) 他寫了寫字 jyòu 上 lóu 了.	He did a bit of writing, then went upstairs.

3) 我在城裏頭買了買東西 jyòu 回 jyā 了. — I did a little shopping in town, then I went home.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) After we did a little shopping in town, we went to a Chinese restaurant and ate a big meal.

2) He studied a little Chinese and then went to China.

3) He read the newspaper for a little while and then went to town.

4) I asked him if he liked to eat Chinese food. He thought it over and then told me that he did not care much about Chinese food.

5) They lived in France for a little while, then they moved to England to live.

Pattern 3

A: 我 jyòu是不 hwèi 作飯. — I just don't know how to cook.

Examples:

1) 他說他 jyòu是不 syǐhwan 吃日本飯. — He said that he just doesn't like to eat Japanese food.

2) 他 jyòu是不 hwèi chàng 中gwo gē 兒. — He just doesn't know how to sing Chinese songs.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) They just don't like him.

2) He just does not study.

3) This helmet is just what our sergeant wanted.

4) This canteen is not bad. It is just not big enough.

5) That French lady said only French wine is good to drink.

B: 他的 hái 子 jēn 是 tsūng-明 jí 了.
His children are really clever (smart).

Examples:

1) 你 jēn 是 一個 好 hái子.
You are really a good child.

2) 今天 上 wǔ 我 jēn是 mángjí 了.
I'm really very busy this morning.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) What he said was really interesting.

2) Her sister is really pretty.

3) The colonel's shoes were made in Germany. They are really good looking.

4) That company commander looks really young.

5) That car is really small. It can only seat two people.

C: 我 hái 是 不 hwèi chàng 那個 gē 兒.
I still don't know how to sing that song.

Examples:

1) 他 在 日本 jù 了 三年, hái 是 不 syǐhwan 吃 日本 飯.
He stayed in Japan for three years; but he still doesn't like Japanese food.

2) 我們 gěi 了 他 很 多 錢; 他 hái 是 說 沒有 錢.
We gave him a lot of money; but he still says he has none.

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) I studied Japanese for three years, but I still cannot speak Japanese.

2) My teacher taught me to sing this song, but I still don't know how to sing it.

3) After the talk with your father, do you still want to do it?

4) We have eaten so many times in that restaurant. Do you still want to eat there?

5) The First Lieutenant told the Sergeant not to go, but I heard that the Sergeant still wanted to go.

Homework

A. Read the following story out loud several times:

Dzwótyan dzài jyēshang kànjyan Wáng Syānsheng. Tā shwō, tā tàitai bùshūfule. Wǎnshang wǒ gēn wǒ Tàitai dàu Wáng jyā chyù kàn tāmen. Wáng Syānsheng búdzài jyā, gāng chūchyu. Wǒ tàitai wèn Wáng Tàitai: "Dzěmma le?" Wáng Tàitai shwō "Méishémma, jyòu shr̀ lèile." Wǒ shwō: "Yàushr nín syǎng chr̄ shémma dūngsyi kéyi jyàu wǒ tàitai dzwò yǐdyǎr sùnglai, byé kèchi." Wáng Tàitai shwō: "Wǒ bùsyǎng chr̄ shémma, syèsye nǐmen lái." Wǒmen dzwòle yǐhwěr jyòu dzǒule.

B. Fill in the following blanks:

1) Dzwótyān dzài......kànjyan.....le.

2) .....wǒ gēn.......dàu.......chyùle.

3) ....búdzài jyā.

4) ....bùshūfule.

5) ....yàu gěi Wáng Tàitai dzwò chr̄de.

6) Wáng Tàitai shwō "..............."

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos. 128-135)

128.	看 看	kàn	V: see, look at; read; (visit; think, consider; depends upon)	看書 看 jyan 看看 看一看 好看	- read a book - see - take a look - take a look - beautiful
129.	手	shǒu	N: hand	手 chyāng 手表	- pistol - wrist watch
130.	表	byǎu	N: watch	手表 表太 kwài	- wrist watch - the watch is too fast
131.	鐘 (鈡)	jūng	N: clock	大鐘	- big clock
132.	知	jr̄	BF: know	知道	- know
133.	道	dàu	BF: know	不知道	- don't know
134.	時 时	shŕ	BF: time	時候	-time
135.	候 (矦)	hòu	BF: period	有的時候	- sometimes

B. Sentences

1. Dzěn 麼了？ 他那個鐘又 hwài 了？

2. 我們屋子前頭的鐘太多.

3. Dzěn 麼他說這個鐘可以用一萬年？

4. 先生來了. 我們進去好不好？

5. 那位外 gwo 小 jye 說的中文不 hwài.

6. 我在那個地方做了半天的事.

7. 我請他們吃飯用了十六塊八毛七分錢.

8. 你知道這 tyáu 路近，坐火車今天晚上就到了.

9. 我沒有表所以不知道 syàn 在是甚麼時候.

10. 昨天我看 jyan 你女朋友了，他的手表很好看.

11. 那個日本小 hái 子跑了多少時候的路？

12. 這兒 li 城裡頭很遠, syàn 在進城,時候

不 gòu 了.

13. 父親因為 bìng 了,用了兩千四百多 kwai 錢. Syàn 在好了.

14. 昨天早上我去看了看老王, 因為他不大 shūfu.

15. Dìdi 看了看書, 寫了寫字, jyou 跑出去了.

16. 你母親上月買的那 sye 中 gwo 茶很好 hē. 是在那兒買的?

17. 他 gěi 了我他的手 chyāng 了.

C. STORY

人人 dōu syǐhwan 買東西, 可是買了東西不一定用.

男人買東西的時候 chángcháng 想: 我為甚麼買這個東西? 可是女人買東西的時候 jyòu 不想這個.

有一回, 我太太用了五十 kwài 錢買了一

個大鐘. 我 wèn 他為甚麼買這個大鐘. 他說:「因為這個大鐘很貴, 別人 dōu 不 néng 買. 要是我不買, shéi 買?」

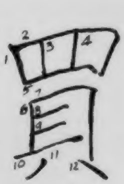
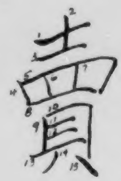
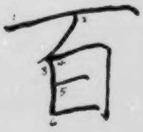
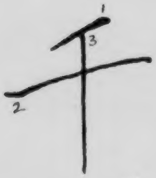
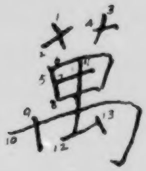
又有一回,他買了很多衣 shang, 我 wèn 他為甚麼買那 sye 衣 shang. 他又說:「你不知道. 這五件衣 shang dōu 是 Fàgwo 來的. 所以我 děi 買.」

又有一回,他買了一個 syīn bǐ. 我 wèn 他:「你 yǐjing 有很多 bǐ 了, 為甚麼又買一個?」他說:「你看. 這個 bǐ 是 syīn 出來的, 別人 dōu 沒有, 所以我要買一個.」

又有一回,他買了一個手表. 我 wèn 他:「為甚麼買那個手表?」他說:「因為這個手表 měi 人 dōu 有一個, 所以我也 děi 買一個.」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 81-85)

B. Radicals

1.	貝	(shell, 154)	as in:	買, 賣
2.	白	(white, 106)	as in:	百
3.	十	(ten, 24)	as in:	千
4.	艹	(grass, 140)	as in:	萬

LESSON 32

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	Nǐ 甚麼 時候 chǐ來?	What time do you get up?
	B:	六 dyǎn 半.	Half past six.
	A:	你 太太 甚麼 時候 做 早飯?	What time does your wife prepare breakfast?
	B:	六 dyǎn 三 kè.	Six forty-five.
	A:	你 甚麼 時候 吃早飯?	What time do you eat breakfast?
	B:	七 dyǎn 十分.	Ten minutes after seven.
	A:	你 甚麼 時候 看 bàu?	What time do you read the papers?
	B:	七 dyǎn 一 kè.	Quarter after seven.
	A:	你 甚麼 時候 念書?	What time do you study?
	B:	七 dyǎn 二十分.	Twenty minutes after seven.
	A:	你 甚麼 時候 出 mén?	What time do you go out?
	B:	七 dyǎn 半.	Half past seven.
	A:	你 甚麼 時候 到 sywésyàu?	What time do you arrive at school?

B:	Chà 十分 八 dyǎn.	Ten minutes to eight.
A:	你們 甚麼 時候 上 kè?	What time do you attend class?
B:	八 dyǎn jūng.	Eight o'clock.
A:	你們 甚麼 時候 下 kè?	When are your classes over?
B:	四 dyǎn.	Four o'clock.
A:	你 甚麼 時候 回 jyā?	What time do you go home?
B:	四 dyǎn 五分.	Five minutes after four.
A:	你 甚麼 時候 到 jyā?	What time do you arrive at home?
B:	四 dyǎn 一 kè.	Quarter after four.
A:	甚麼 時候 吃 晚 飯?	What time do you have supper?
B:	Chà 五分 六 dyǎn.	Five minutes to six.
A:	甚麼 時候 shwèijyàu?	What time do you go to bed?
B:	九 dyǎn 三 kè.	Nine forty-five.

	A: 你每天一定很lèi ba.	You must be very tired every day, I suppose.
	B: Dwèi了. Jēn lèi.	That is true. I am really tired.
2.	A: 上wǔ 甚麼時候可以 hē 茶?	What time can you have tea in the morning?
	B: 八dyǎn 五十分.	Eight fifty.
	A: 甚麼時候可以吃中飯?	What time can you eat your lunch?
	B: 十一dyǎn.	Eleven o'clock.
	A: 上wǔ 甚麼時候可以回jyā?	What time can you go home in the morning?
	B: 十一dyǎn 十分.	Ten minutes after eleven.
	A: 下wǔ 甚麼時候上kè?	When do your classes begin in the afternoon?
	B: 一dyǎn.	One o'clock.
	A: 下wǔ 甚麼時候下kè?	When are your classes over in the afternoon?
	B: 下wǔ 四dyǎn 鐘.	Four o'clock in the afternoon.

L. 32

	A:	晚飯甚麼時候吃？	What time do you have supper?
	B:	下wǔ 五dyǎn 鐘.	Five o'clock in the afternoon.
3.	A:	Syàn在甚麼時候了？	What time is it now?
	B:	四dyǎn 多了.	It is after four.
	A:	四dyǎn jǐ分了?	How many minutes after four?
	B:	四dyǎn 三分了.	Three minutes after four.
	A:	Syàn在他的表jǐdyǎn鐘了?	What time is it now by his watch?
	B:	Syàn在他的表五dyǎn多了.	It is after five o'clock now by his watch.
	A:	五dyǎn jǐ分了?	How many minutes after five?
	B:	五dyǎn 一kè了.	A quarter after five.
	A:	他的表太kwài了.	His watch is too fast.
4.	A:	下kè的時候到了麼?	Is it time to dismiss the class?
	B:	Gwò了.	The time has passed.

A:	Gwò了 多少 時候 了?	By how much?
B:	Gwò了 半分鐘了.	It's half a minute over.
A:	先生, nǐn 為甚麼 hái 不下 kè?	Why haven't you dismissed the class, teacher?
B:	我沒表・好, 我們 syàn 在 jyòu 下 kè.	I don't have a watch. O.K. We will dismiss the class now.

II. Basic Dialogue

1. Bái:	Lǐ 太太 , Lǐ 先生 在 jyā 麼 ?	Is Mr. Lǐ at home, Mrs. Lǐ?
Lǐ:	在 jyā, 可是 hái shwèijyàu ne.	Yes, he is, but he is still sleeping.
Bái:	Dzěn 麼 hái shwèijyàu ne? Syàn 在 yǐjing 九 dyǎn 一 kè 了.	Why is he still sleeping? It is quarter after nine now.
Lǐ:	昨天 yè 裡, 他 沒 shwèijyàu.	He didn't sleep last night.
Bái:	他 一 yè dōu 沒 shwèijyàu 麼 ?	Didn't he sleep at all the whole night?
Lǐ:	是的. 昨天 下 wǔ 他 有 dyǎn 兒 不 shūfu, 所以 晚飯 也 沒吃.	That is right. He was somewhat sick yesterday afternoon, and consequently he didn't have any supper.
Bái:	昨天 他 吃 wǔ 飯 了 麼 ?	Did he have his lunch yesterday?
Lǐ:	吃了. 可是 吃的 不太多.	Yes, he did, but not very much.

	Bái:	他syàn在好了ma?	Is he well now?
	Lǐ:	Hái是不大好.	He isn't quite well yet.
	Bái:	今天上wǔ他hái可以jyāu我Yīng文麼?	Can he still teach me English this morning?
	Lǐ:	我想不行了. Nín明天中wǔ dzài來ba.	I don't think so. I suggest that you come again tomorrow noon.
2.	**Bái:**	Lǐ太太, 今天bái天nín有工夫麼?	Are you free during the day today, Mrs. Li?
	Lǐ:	Nín有甚麼事?	What do you have in mind?
	Bái:	我想請nín gēn我出去買東西, 行不行?	I am thinking of asking you to go shopping with me, is it all right?
	Lǐ:	行. 甚麼時候出去?	Surely. What time do we go?
	Bái:	九dyǎn半, 好不好?	How about half past nine?
	Lǐ:	Yǐjing gwò了. Syàn在yǐjing九dyǎn五十分了.	It is past that time. It is now nine fifty.

117

L. 32

Bái:	我們 syàn 在 lìkè jyòu 走 ba.	Let us go right away.
Lǐ:	好，我們 甚麼 時候 回來？	O.K. When shall we come back?
Bái:	下 wǔ 兩 三 dyǎn 鐘，行不行？	Would two or three o'clock in the afternoon do?
Lǐ:	行. 我們 děi 在 jyē 上 吃 wǔ 飯.	It is all right. We will have to eat in town.
Bái:	可以 到 我們 那兒 去 吃 wǔ 飯.	We can eat lunch at our place.
Lǐ:	因為 Lǐ 先生 不大 shūfu, 所以 děi kwài dyǎn 兒 回來.	I must hurry back because Mr. Lǐ isn't very well.
Bái:	我們 買了 東西，jyòu 回來，好麼？	We will come back right after shopping, how is that?
Lǐ:	很好. 我們 lìkè jyòu 走.	That is very good. Let us go right now.
Bái:	Nín dàije 錢了麼？	Have you any money on you?

Lǐ: Dài了. 不太多，我想gòu了.

Yes, I have. Not very much, but I think it is sufficient.

Vocabulary

56.	báityān	白天	(MA) N:	daytime, during the day
56.1	bái	白	SV:	be white
57.	chà	差	V:	differ by; lack, be short
58.	chǐlai	起來	V:	rise, get up
59.	-dyǎn	點	M:	hour
60.	-fēn	分	M:	minute
61.	gwò	過	V:	pass, past, exceed; cross over
62.	jūngwǔ	中午	(MA) N:	noon
63.	-kè	刻	M:	quarter-hour
64.	shàngwǔ	上午	(MA) N:	forenoon
65.	shwèijyàu	睡覺	VO:	sleep, retire
66.	syàwǔ	下午	(MA) N:	afternoon
67.	wǔfàn	午飯	N:	noon meal
68.	-yè	夜	M:	night
68.1	yèli	夜裏	(MA) N:	nighttime, during the night
68.2	yíyè	一夜	(MA) N:	a night, the whole night
68.3	bànyè	半夜	(MA) N:	midnight

1. Telling time by the clock:

The three commonest units of measurement of time by the clock are -dyǎn (hour), -kè (quarter), and -fēn (minute). These measures are preceded by appropriate number words, and followed by the noun jūng (clock). Note that for even hours the full expressions jūng is usually used, whereas in fractional expression jūng is usually dropped.

yìdyǎn jūng	one o'clock
lyǎngdyǎn jūng	two o'clock
chīdyǎn jūng	seven o'clock
bādyǎn jūng	eight o'clock
yìdyǎn-sānkè	forty-five minutes after one
lyǎngdyǎn-yíkè	quarter after two
bādyǎnbàn	half past eight
shŕdyǎnbàn	half past ten
yìdyǎn-shŕfēn	ten after one
lyǎngdyǎn-shŕwǔ	fifteen after two
jyǒudyǎn-sz̀shrwǔ	nine forty-five
shŕyīdyǎn-wǔshrwǔ	eleven fifty-five

Dàu (come), chà (lack), or gwò (exceed) and dwō (over, after) are used in Chinese to say such expressions as "the time has come" or "how much time short of" or "how much time past".

Shŕhou dàule ma?	Is it time yet?
Shŕhou dàule.	Yes, it is.
Hái chà bàndyǎn jūng ne.	There is half an hour yet.

L. 32

Shŕhou gwòle.	Time is past.
chà yíkè shŕdyǎn.	quarter to ten.
shŕdyǎn gwò shŕfēn.	ten minutes after ten.
Dàu lyǎngdyǎn le ma?	Is it two o'clock?
Gwòle lyǎngdyǎn le. or: lyǎngdyǎndwō le.	It is past two o'clock.
Gwò dwōshau le?	How much past?
Gwòle yíkè jūng le.	It is quarter past.
Yìdyǎndwō jūng.	Over an hour. Or: It is past one o'clock.

Translate the following:

1) I arrived at the school at seven o'clock this morning.
2) From eight o'clock in the morning to four o'clock in the afternoon I attend classes.
3) I will be home at five-thirty this afternoon.
4) Can you come to have supper with me at eight o'clock this evening?
5) I will come at a quarter to seven.
6) It is now twenty minutes past five. Why haven't you returned home yet?
7) I had my lunch ten minutes after twelve.
8) We study more than two hours every night.

2. Larger units of time

Larger units of time, such as year, month, week, day, and division of the day, always precede the time by the clock, (always from large to small.)

jīntyān syàwǔ sż̀dyǎn jūng	four o'clock this afternoon
shànglǐbàilyòu dzǎushang bādyǎnbàn	half past eight last Saturday morning
yījyǒuwǔyīnyán Lyòuywè báhàu, dzǎushang shŕdyǎn	ten o'clock in the morning of June 8th, 1951
Syàlǐbàiwǔ, Chíywè wǔhàu, syàwǔ sāndyǎn	three o'clock in the afternoon of next Friday, July 5th

3. Inquiring the time of day

In asking and giving the time of day no verb is necessary, although shŕ or yǒu is sometimes used. The particle of completion -le is sometimes attached to both question and reply.

Syàndzài shémma shŕhou le?	What time is it now?
Wǔdyǎnbàn le.	It is half past five.
Syàndzài jǐdyǎn jūng le?	What time is it now?
Sāndyǎn yíkè le.	Quarter past three.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

A: 我們下wǔ 一dyǎn鐘上 kè. We go to class at one P.M.

Examples:

1) 他一dyǎn半鐘在 jyā. He is home at one thirty.

2) Syàn在兩 dyǎn 十分. It is now 2:10.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Sometimes I have lunch at 12:30, and sometimes I have lunch at 1:00 P.M.

2) He said he would come tomorrow at 3:45 P.M.

3) I was here all morning. When did he come?

4) He came in the afternoon at about three o'clock.

5) All the stores in the city open till nine P.M. every night this week.

b. Say the following and render it into English:

1) yìdyǎnjūng

2) yìdyǎn shŕfēn

3) lyángdyǎn yíkè

4) sāndyǎnbàn

5) sz̀dyǎn sānkè

6) sz̀dyǎn sz̀shrwǔ

7) wǔdyǎn wǔshrfēn

8) Q: Tā shwō tā shémma shŕhou lái?

A: Tā shwō tā lyǎngdyǎn jūng lái.

9) Q: Nǐ yàu yìdyǎn jūng chyù ma?

A: Wǒ yàu sāndyǎn jūng chyù.

10) Q: Wǒmen shémma shŕhou chr̄fàn?

A: Wǒmen lyòudyǎn jūng chr̄fàn.

11) Q: Lyòudyǎn jūng chr̄fàn tài wǎn. Wǒmen wǔdyǎn jūng chr̄, hǎu buhǎu?

A: Wǔdyǎn jūng tài dzǎu.

12) Q: Wǔdyǎnbàn hǎu buhǎu?

A: Hǎu. Wǒmen wǔdyǎnbàn chr̄fàn.

B:	
時候到了!	It is time.
時候 gwò 了.	It is past time.
chà 五分一 dyǎn	Five minutes to one
兩 dyǎn gwò 十分.	Ten minutes past two
三 dyǎn 多了.	Past three o'clock

Examples:

1) 五 dyǎn gwò 多少了?	How far past five o'clock?
2) 五 dyǎn gwò 一 kè 了.	It is a quarter past five.
3) 時候到了麼?	Is it time?
4) Chà 多少四 dyǎn?	How long before four o'clock?
5) Chà 八分四 dyǎn.	It is eight minutes to four.

Exercise:

a. Complete the following blanks with the time given on the right:

1) Shŕèrdyǎn.......wǔfēn. (Five minutes past 12 o'clock)

2) ....shŕfēn sżdyǎn. (Ten minutes to four o'clock)

3) Bādyǎn.....yíkè le. (Quarter past eight)

4) Yīdyǎn......(Ten after one)

5) Shŕhou.....le (Time is past)

b. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Is it time yet?

2) There are ten minutes yet.

3) He said he would come at 10:30.

4) I eat my breakfast at seven o'clock every day.

5) Do you go to work at 7:30?

Pattern 2

Larger unit of time

一九六五年 三月 十 hàu 是 lĭbàijĭ?	What day of the week was March 10th, 1965?
Examples:	
1) 明天早上你到 sywé-syàu 來麼?	Are you coming to school tomorrow morning?
2) 六月十九 hàu, Lĭbài 六, 你有工夫麼?	Will you have time on Saturday, June 19th?
3) Lĭbài 一 下 wŭ 三 dyăn, 你到我 jyā 來我 dĕng 你.	Come to my house on Monday afternoon at three o'clock. I'll wait for you.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) She left China on January 5, 1960.

2) We go to school together every morning at 7:45.

3) He was here at four o'clock this afternoon.

4) She taught English in our school from February 14, 1962 to March 19, 1963.

5) Miss Wáng went to France with her parents in February 1945 and studied there till January 1950, and then went to England to teach.

b. Say the following and render it into English:

1) Q: Tā shémma shŕhou dàu Řběn chyùde?

A: Tā yìjyǒuwǔsānnyán Chíywè chyùde.

2) Q: Tā shémma shŕhou hwéilaide?

A: Tā yìjyǒuwǔsz̀nyán Báywè hwéilaide.

3) Q: Tā fùmǔ yěshr yìjyǒuwǔsz̀nyán Báywè hwéilaide ma?

A: Tā fùmǔ búshr̀ yìjyǒuwǔsz̀nyán Báywè hwéilaide.

4) Q: Tā fùmǔ shémma shŕhou hwéilaide?

A: Tā fùmǔ méihwéilai.

5) Q: Tāmen shémma shŕhou chyùde?

A: Tāmen shr yìjyǒusz̀lyòunyán Wǔywè chyùde.

6) Q: Tāmen chyùle kwài èrshrnyán le ma?

A: Dwèile. Tāmen chyùle kwài èrshŕnyán le.

L. 32

Homework

A. Read the following story out loud several times:

Syǎu Wáng měityān báityān nyànshū, wǎnshang dzwòshr̀. Yǒude shŕhou shwèijyàu búgòu, dièrtyān dzǎushang chǐbulái. Yě yǒude shŕhou dzài sywésyàu shwèijyàu. Jūngwǔ tā bùhwéijyā chr̄ wǔfàn, jyòu dzài sywésyàu mǎi yìdyǎr dūngsyi, chr̄le yǐhou jyòu shwèi yíkèjūng. Yǒu yítsz̀ tā bànyè chǐlai nyànshū, nyàndau tyān kwài lyàngle. Dièrtyān hěn lèi. Chr̄le wǔfàn jyòu dzài chúfáng hòutoude syǎuwūdzli shwèijyàu, wàngle shàngkè. Hòulai, syānsheng jyàu tā chǐlai chyù shàngkè. Tā tsái syǎngchilai tā shr̀ dzài sywésyàu, búshr̀ dzài jyā.

B. Answer the following questions:

1) Syǎu Wáng báityān shwèijyàu ma?
2) Wèishémma?
3) Syǎu Wáng bùsyǐhwan nyànshū ma?
4) Syānsheng bùjr̄dau Syǎu Wáng dzài nǎr ma?
5) Syǎu Wáng bùchr̄ wǔfàn ma?
6) Syǎu Wáng wǎnshang dzwò shémma?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos. 136-144)

136. 見	jyàn	V: see, meet (more formal than 看) [PV: (indicates perception of what is seen, heard, or smelled)]	看見 - see
137. 哥	gē	BF: elder brother	哥哥 - elder brother 大哥 - eldest brother
138. 弟	dì	BF: younger brother	弟弟 - younger brother 三弟 - third younger brother
139. 親 (亲)	chīn	BF: parents	父親 - father 母親 - mother
140. 都	dōu	A: all, both	都不去 - all are not going 都好 - all are well
141. 必	bì	BF: must	不必 - need not

L. 32

142. 放 fàng V: put, place, let go of
放下 - put down
放在這兒 - put (it) here

143. 心 syīn N: heart
dyǎn 心 - refreshments, snacks, cakes

B. Sentences

1. 你哥哥甚麼時候吃的 dyǎn 心?
2. 我哥哥吃早飯的時候吃的 dyǎn 心.
3. 你弟弟甚麼時候寫字?
4. 我弟弟晚上寫字.
5. 你母親在那兒看書?
6. 我母親在 wū 子裡頭看書.
7. 你父親在甚麼地方作買賣?
8. 我父親在城外頭作買賣.
9. 你看見 shéi 了?
10. 我看見了很多老朋友.
11. 他們都好麼?
12. 都很好.
13. 有一位朋友 gěi 王先生一個大鐘.

14. 你看見了麼？

15. 因為 jyòu 放在 kètīng 裡頭，所以我
看見了.

16. 從這兒到那兒遠麼？

17. 不大遠也不大近.

18. 要坐火車去麼？

19. 不必. 可以坐我的 chì車去.

20. 你要 gěi 他買東西麼？

21. 我想買 dyǎn兒中gwo 茶.

22. 你 chwān 甚麼衣shang 去？

23. 一件日本衣shang.

24. 從我們 fáng子前頭那個路去，行麼？

25. Fáng子前頭後頭那兩個路都行.

C. Story

我女朋友昨天請我到他 jyā去吃 dyǎn心. 下午四dyǎn十五分我到了他jyā，這是我頭一回到他jyā裡去. 他父親，母親，大哥，二哥，

L. 32

小弟弟我都看見了. 那天我gēn他們說了不少的話. 我們都是用中文tán的話. 他父親wèn我是不是明年回Měigwo. 他母親wèn我有工夫的時候作甚麼. 他小弟弟說先生jyāu他: 兩kè鐘jyòu是半dyǎn鐘; 又jyāu他吃飯的時候yīngdang一個手放在jwō子上頭, 一個手放在jwō子下頭. 他的大哥要到Měigwo去念書, wèn我知道不知道那個sywésyàu好. 他二哥又wèn我中gwo東西在Měigwo好賣不好賣. 他要作買賣. 我女朋友看見我說話太多了, 要給我水hē, 我說: 「不必了, 我děi回去念書了. 我走了. Dzài見吧.」 我沒dǒng我女朋友說可以不可以, jyòu走了.

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 86-90)

毛 半 作

(做)

事 寫

B. Radicals

1. 毛 (hair, 82) as the word: 毛
2. 十 (ten, 24) as in: 半
3. 亻 (man, 9) as in: 作, 做
4. 亅 (hook, 6) as in: 事
5. 宀 (roof, 40) as in: 寫

LESSON 33

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	昨天你都做甚麼了?	What did you do yesterday?
	B:	早上我念了兩個鐘頭的Yīng文.	I studied English for two hours in the morning.
	A:	你念了jǐ個鐘頭的中gwo書?	How many hours of Chinese did you study?
	B:	念了一個多鐘頭.	I studied for more than an hour.
	A:	寫了jǐ個鐘頭的中gwo字?	How many hours of Chinese character writing did you do?
	B:	下wǔ寫了兩個鐘頭的中gwo字.	I wrote Chinese characters for two hours in the afternoon.
	A:	晚上你寫了jǐ個鐘頭的syìn?	How many hours of letter writing did you do in the evening?
	B:	三個鐘頭的syìn. 一gùng寫了七fēng.	I wrote letters for three hours and altogether I wrote seven letters.

L. 33

A:	你 yè裡 shwèi了 jĭ個 鐘頭的 jyàu?	How many hours of sleep did you have at night?
B:	八個 鐘頭.	Eight hours.
A:	今天 你 要 上 jĭ個 鐘頭的 kè?	How many hours of classes are you going to attend?
B:	六個 鐘頭, 上wŭ 三個 鐘頭, 下wŭ 也是 三個 鐘頭.	Six hours; three in the morning and also three in the afternoon.
A:	你 吃 wŭ飯, 用 多少 時候?	How much time does it take you to eat lunch?
B:	半個多 鐘頭.	Over half an hour.
A:	你 吃 早飯, 用 多少 時候?	How much time does it take you to eat breakfast?
B:	半 dyăn 多 鐘.	Over half an hour.
A:	你 吃 晚飯, 用 多少 時候?	How much time does it take you to eat supper?
B:	一個 鐘頭.	One hour.
A:	你 從 你 jyā 到 這兒, 走 多少 時候?	How much time does it take you to come to school from your home on foot?

	B:	半 dyǎn 鐘.	Half an hour.
	A:	你 從 這兒 到 你 jyā, 用 多少 時候?	How much time does it take you to go to your house from here?
	B:	也 是 半個 鐘頭.	Also half an hour.
2.	A:	要是 你 有 錢, 你 買 甚麼?	What would you buy, if you had money?
	B:	我 有 錢, jyòu 買 syīn chì 車.	I would buy a new car, if I had money.
	A:	要是 你 有 syīn chì 車, 你 做 甚麼?	What would you do if you had a new car?
	B:	我 有 syīn chì 車, jyòu 天天 出去 wán兒.	I would go out to drive around every day if I had a new car.
	A:	要是 你 出去 wán兒, 你 到 甚麼 地方 去?	Where would you go if you were going out to drive around?
	B:	要是 我 出去 wán兒, jyòu 到 Jyòujīnshān 去.	I would go to San Francisco if I wanted to go out and drive around.
3.	A:	要是 你 可以 到 日本 去, 你 hái 想 回來 麼?	Would you want to come back if you could go to Japan?
	B:	我 hái 想 回來.	I would.

L. 33

	A:	要是你可以在日本 jù 十年，你想做甚麼?	What would you do if you could stay in Japan for ten years?
	B:	要是我可以在日本 jù 十年，我 jyòu 先 sywé 說日本話.	I would learn to speak Japanese first if I could stay in Japan for ten years.
4.	A:	你 chángcháng gěi 你父母寫 syìn 麼?	Do you often write to your parents?
	B:	我一有工夫，jyòu gěi 他們寫 syìn.	I write to them whenever I am free.
	A:	你父母也 chángcháng gěi 你寫 syìn 麼?	Do your parents often write you?
	B:	他們也是一有工夫，jyòu gěi 我寫 syìn.	They too would write me whenever they were free.
	A:	你甚麼時候去看他們?	When will you go to visit them?
	B:	Lǐbài 五，一下 kè 我 jyòu 去看他們	On Friday I will go and visit them right after my classes.
	A:	他們看見你回 jyā 的時候 gāusyìng 不 gāusyìng?	Are they happy when they see you coming home?

B: 他們 一看見 我 回 jyā, jyòu gāusyìngjí 了.	They are extremely happy when they see me coming home.
A: 你 母親 看見 你的 時候, wèn 你 甚麼?	What does your mother ask you when she sees you?
B: 他 一看見 我, jyòu wèn 我 想 吃 甚麼.	She asks me what I want to eat as soon as she sees me.
A: 你 父親 看見 你的 時候, 他 wèn 你 甚麼?	What does your father ask you when he sees you?
B: 他 一看見 我 jyòu wèn 我 念書 念的 好不好.	He asks me how I am doing in my studies.

II. Basic Dialogue

Bái:	Lǐ 太太，Lǐ 先生 在 jyā 麼?	Is Mr. Lǐ at home, Mrs. Lǐ?
Lǐ:	Bái 小 jye, 你 dzěn 麼 來晚了?	How come you are late, Miss Bái?
Bái:	Dzěn 麼了? Lǐ 先生 不在 jyā 麼?	What happened? Isn't Mr. Lǐ at home?
Lǐ:	他 děng 了 你 一hwěi兒; 他 gāng 出去.	He waited for you for a while; he just went out.
Bái:	Gānggāng 出去? 到 那兒 去了?	He just went out? Where did he go?
Lǐ:	要是 你 早來五分鐘, 你 jyòu 看見 他了.	You would have caught him if you had come five minutes earlier.
Bái:	他 為甚麼 出去? 有 要jǐn的 事麼?	Why did he go out? Is there anything important?
Lǐ:	Gāngtsái 他 gàusung 我, 今天 是 一個 很 要jǐn的日子 有 朋友 請 他 吃飯.	He told me a moment ago that today is a very important day; he was invited by his friend to dine.
Bái:	Nín 知道 他 甚麼 時候 回來麼?	Do you know when he will be back?

Lǐ:	他沒 gàusung 我, 我想他一吃了飯, jyòu lìkè 回來.	He didn't tell me. I believe that he will be back right after the meal.
Bái:	Nín 知道他們在那兒吃飯麼?	Do you know where they are eating?
Lǐ:	我也不大 chīngchu. Bái 小 jye, nín 有甚麼要 jǐn 的事麼?	I don't know for sure. Is there anything urgent, Miss Bái?
Bái:	我那位 kūngjyūn 朋友 gěi 我寫了一 fēng syìn, 我看了 chà 不多兩個鐘頭. 我的 Yīng 文 jēn 不好.	That air force friend of mine wrote me a letter. I read it for almost two hours. My English is really poor.
Lǐ:	你要 gěi 他寫 syìn 麼?	Are you going to write him?
Bái:	我不 hwèi 寫, dzěn 麼 bàn?	I don't know how to write. What shall I do?
Lǐ:	很好 bàn. 我可以 tì 你寫.	That can be easily arranged. I can write it for you.

L. 33

Bái:	Nín 可以 tì 我寫麼? 我可 jēn syèsye nín.	Can you write it for me? I would be really grateful to you.
Lǐ:	是用 Yīng文寫, 是不是?	Will I have to write it in English?
Bái:	Dwèi了. 用 Yīng文寫. 在甚麼地方寫?	That is right. Write in English. Where will you write it?
Lǐ:	這個 wū子 tài hēi, 我們到書fáng裡去寫 ba.	It is too dark here, let us go to the study to write it.
Bái:	書fáng lyàng 一dyǎn兒麼?	Is the study brighter?
Lǐ:	書fáng lyàng 一dyǎn兒, 我們一坐下, 我 jyòu tì 你寫.	The study is brighter. I will write it for you as soon as we sit down.
Bái:	Nín 要看看這fēng syìn麼?	Do you want to read this letter?
Lǐ:	一定 děi 看看.	I certainly must read it.
Bái:	他一gùng寫了六jāng jř.	He wrote six pages altogether.

LǏ:	這一 fēng syìn 一定很有 yìsz, 我也要看一兩個鐘頭.	This letter must be very interesting. I also want to read it for a couple of hours.
Bái:	Nín jyòu 看 yìhwěi 兒 ba.	Please just glance over it.
LǏ:	要是我不都看, 我 jyòu 不 néng tì 你寫.	I can't write the letter for you if I don't read it completely.
Bái:	好, 好, 請 nín kwài dyǎn 兒 tì 我寫 ba.	O.K. Please hurry and write for me.
LǏ:	Bái 小 jye, 我想我明天 gěi 你, 好不好?	Miss Bái, is it all right if I give it to you tomorrow?
Bái:	好 jí 了. 因為今天太晚了, 我 děi 回去了.	That is wonderful. I have to go because it is too late today.
LǏ:	不早了. Dzài 見.	It is late. Goodbye!

L. 33

Vocabulary

69.	bàn	辦	V:	manage
70.	chàbudwō	差不多	IE:	almost, about
71.	dzău	早	SV:	be early
72.	dzĕmma bàn	怎麼辦	IE:	what can be done (about it)?
73.	gāng	剛	A:	just this minute
73.1	gānggāng	剛剛	A:	just this minute
73.2	gāngtsái	剛才	MA:	just a moment ago
74.	gàusung	告訴	V:	tell, inform
75.	hēi	黑	SV:	be black; be dark
76.	jūngtóu	鐘頭	N:	an hour
77.	kĕ	可	A:	indeed, certainly, however
78.	lyàng	亮	SV:	be light or bright (opp. dark)
79.	ȑdz	日子	N:	day; a special day
80.	wăn	晚	SV:	be late

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Amounts of time by the clock

The measures for amounts of time by the clock are fēn (minute), kè (quarter) and dyǎn (hour), the same as used for the points in time by the clock. Whether these measures are used for the amounts of time or points in time in a sentence, only the construction and context can tell. As points in time, they are used as "time when" expressions and stand before the verb. As amounts of time, they are used as "time spent" expression and stand after the verb. For the amount of time in terms of hours and fractions of an hour, there is this noun jūngtóu (hour).

yìdyǎn jūng	an hour; one o'clock
yìdyǎnbàn jūng	one hour and a half: one thirty
yíge jūngtóu	an hour
yígebàn jūngtóu	one hour and half
yìdyǎn yíkè jūng	an hour and a quarter: one fifteen
yíge jūngtóu líng yíkè	an hour and a quarter
yìfēn jūng	one minute
shŕwǔfēn jūng	fifteen minutes
wǔshrfēn jūng	fifty minutes
Tā dzǒule dwōshau shŕhou le?	How long has he been gone?

Háidz wárle lyǎngge jūngtóu le.	The children have played for two hours.
Wǒ děngle tā sānkè jūng le.	I have waited him for three quarters of an hour.
Nǐ láile jǐge jūngtóu le?	How many hours have you been here?
Háidz kūle shŕfēn jūng le.	The child has been crying for ten minutes.
Wǒ kànle lyǎngdyǎn jūngde bàu.	I read newspapers for two hours.

Translate the following:

1) How long have you been sitting here?
2) I have been sitting here for an hour.
3) How long have you waited for me?
4) I have waited fifty minutes.
5) How many hours has he been inside?
6) He has gone inside for about an hour and a half.
7) How many minutes have you been running?
8) I have been running for five minutes.

2. Just as soon as

The Chinese equivalent of the expression "just as soon as" is formed by using the numeral yī (once, one) before the verb of the dependent clause and jyòu (then) before the verb of the main clause which follows the dependent clause.

Wǒ yígàusùng tā, tā jyòu shēngchì le.	He got angry as soon as I told him.

Wǒ yìjr̄dau nǐ yǒubìng, wǒ jyòu láile.	I came as soon as I heard that you were sick.
Tyān yìhēi, tāmen jyòu shwèijyàu, tyān yí-lyàng,tāmen jyòu chǐlai.	They go to bed as soon as it gets dark, and they get up as soon as it is light.
Tā yìshwō, wǒ jyòu míngbaile.	I understand clearly as soon as he explains.
Tā yídàu, wǒmen jyòu chr̄fàn.	We will eat as soon as he arrives.

Translate the following:

1) He went out as soon as he got up.
2) He studies as soon as he has a free moment.
3) Call me as soon as he comes.
4) He opens the windows as soon as he comes in.
5) I will write you as soon as I arrive there.
6) I will tell you as soon as he tells me.
7) The matter is easy. You will be able to do it as soon as I teach you.

3. Supposition

Supposition is expressed by conditioning clauses which always precede the main clause. Yàushr (if) usually is used and it stands in the beginning of the conditioning clause and jyòu (then) is used usually in the main clause and it stands in front of the verb.

L. 33

Nǐ lái, wǒmen jyou búchyùle.	We won't go if you are coming.
Yàushr nǐ bùmíngbai, wǒ jyou dzài shwō yítsz̀.	I will repeat it, if you are not clear.
Yàushr tā yàu, nǐ jyou gěi tā ba.	Give it to him, if he wants it.
Yàushr nǐ chǐng wǒ chyù, wǒ jyou chyù.	I will go if you invite me to go.
Nǐ yǒu bìng, jyou chǐng nǐ hwéi jyā ba.	Please go home, if you are sick.

Translate the following:

1) Come to my place for a chat, if you are free.
2) I can come and help you, if you are moving.
3) He won't get angry, if he understands this clearly.
4) Buy that car, if it is not bad.
5) I will come to see you, if you will be at home at five o'clock this afternoon.
6) He doesn't have to come, if he has important letters to write.
7) You may go outside this room, if you want to smoke.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Amount of time by the clock

他去了 chà 不多一個鐘頭了.	He has been gone almost one hour already.

Examples:

1) 他 jyòu sywé了 十個鐘頭 的中gwo 話.	He only studied ten hours of Chinese.
2) 我在 dzàijùng 車上 yǐjing jàn了 兩個鐘頭了.	I've stood up for two hours already in the truck.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) He sat for a long while and then left.

2) He was in England for only four hours. How could he know all about that country?

3) They have been eating for an hour. Are they still eating?

4) How many hours do you teach every day?

5) He has been gone for three hours.

b. Say the following and render it into English:

1) yíge jūngtóu

2) yíge jūngtóu líng lyǎngfēnjūng

3) yíge jūngtóu líng yíkè jūng

4) shŕfen jūng

5) bànge jūngtóu

6) shŕwǔfen jūng

7) yíkè jūng

8) sżshrfēn jūng

Pattern 2

Use of yi.......jyou (as soon as)

他一看這本書jyòu 生chì.	As soon as he looks at this book, he gets angry.

Examples:

1) 我一吃táng jyòu 想起他來.	As soon as I eat candy, I think of him.
2) 他一進來 我們jyòu 走.	As soon as he enters, we'll go.
3) 時候一到 我們 jyòu吃 dyǎn心.	As soon as it's time, we'll have a snack.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) As soon as she closed the door, she cried.

2) As soon as the dinner is done, we will eat.

3) They came down from the top of the table as soon as they saw us coming.

4) He told us as soon as you told him.

5) They bought a new car as soon as they sold their old one.

b. Say the following and render it into English:

1) Tāde syìn yidàu wǒ jyòu gàusung nǐ.

2) Tā yìyǒu chyán jyòu jìnchéng hǎjyǒu.

3) Tā dzǎushang yìchǐlai jyòu yau chōuyān.

4) Tā yìhwéijyā jyòu nyànshū.

5) Tā yìnyànshū jyòu wàngle chr̄fàn.

6) Tā yídàule Shànghǎi jyòu mǎile yíge syīn byǎu.

7) Wáng Shàngsyàu yìjìnlai wǒmen jyòu dōu jànchilaile.

8) Tāde nyǔpéngyou yìshēngchì tá jyòu bujr̄dau dzěmma bànle.

9) Dūngsyi yìgwèi, mǎide rén jyòu shǎule.

10) Jyēshangde rén yìdwō, gūnggùngchìchē jyòu mànjíle.

Pattern 3

Supposition

要是你不去我 jyòu去.	If you're not going (then) I'm going.

Examples:

1) 要是 你 一 dyǎn鐘去, 我 jyòu 兩dyǎn 鐘去.	If you go at one o'clock, then I'll go at two o'clock.
2) 要是 kètīng 裏頭 没有 人,我們 jyòu 在kètīng 裏頭 念書.	If there is nobody in the parlor, then we'll study there.

Exercise:

a. Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) If you like it, then buy it.

2) If you use chopsticks, I will use chopsticks too.

3) If you don't wear your uniform, what will you wear?

4) If you are going downtown, I will go with you.

5) If you cannot write the letters in Chinese, write them in English.

6) If you understand what she said, you should be able to understand what I said.

7) If one dollar is not enough, give him two dollars.

8) If he is too busy, find someone else to do it.

9) If you are tired now, you can do it tomorrow.

10) If that book is so dull, this one must be dull too.

b. Say the following and render it into English:

1) Yàushr jèige wūdz tài hēi, nĭ kéyi dàu nèige wūdz lĭtou chyu kànshū.

2) Yàushr tā búdzài lyŭgwăn lĭtou, nĭ jyòu bă dūngsyi dàihweilai.

3) Yàushr nĭ shàngjyē, chĭng nĭ búyàu wàngle măi nèibĕn shū.

4) Yàushr nĭ kànjyan lùshang yŏu jànchē, nĭ jyòu hwéilai gàusung wŏmen.

5) Yàushr nĭ bùdĕng tā, tā méiyou chē, dzĕmma chyù?

6) Yàushr nĭ bă dyănsyin dōu chr̄le, kèren láile dzĕmma bàn?

7) Yàushr syàndzài chyù tài dzău, dĕng yìhwĕr dzài chyù.

8) Yàushr nĭ gàusung wŏmen nĭmende shānpàu dzài năr, wŏmen jyòu gĕi nĭ chr̄de dūngsyi.

9) Yàushr nĭ bānjyā, wŏman lái bāngmáng.

10) Yàushr tā bùchōuyān, tā wèishémma măi yān?

Homework

A. Read the following story out loud several times:

Yŏu yìtyān tyān kwài hēile, wŏ dzài jyēshang dzŏu, tīngjyan yíge syăuhár kū. Wŏ kànkan chyántou méiyou rén. Kànkan hòutou yĕ méiyou rén. Kĕshr năr láide háidz kū ne? Hòulai wŏ kànjyan dzài yíge pùdzde chyántou, yŏu yíge syăuhár bă lyăngge shŏu dōu fàngdzai tóushang. Wŏ kànbuchĭngchu nèige háidz shr̀ nánhăidz, háishr nyŭháidz. Wŏ dzŏudàu tāde chyántou wèn tā: "Syăuháidz, nĭ dzĕmma le?" Syăuháidz shwō: "Wŏ mŭchin jyàu wŏ chūlai măi ròu. Wŏ măile ròu jèng yàu hwéijyā, yŏu yíge rén láile, bă wŏde ròu nádzŏule. Wŏ méiyou ròu dzěmma hwéijyā?" Wǒ wèn: "Shr̀ shémma rén? Wǒmen chyù jǎu tā." Tā shwō: "Yǐjing pǎule." Wǒ gěile tā yíkwài táng. Syǎuháidz chr̄le táng jyòu bùkūle. Wǒ shwō:"Nǐ kwài hwéijyā ba." Tā jyòu dzǒule.

B. Answer the following questions:

1) Syǎuháidz dzài nǎr kū?
2) Wèishémma kū?
3) Syǎuháidz dōu syǐhwan chr̄ táng ma?
4) Tā mǎide ròu dzài nǎr?
5) Wǒ gěi syǎuháidz shémma le?
6) Jèige háidz shr̀ nánháidz shr̀ nyǔháidz?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos. 144-151)

144.	得	děi AV:	have to, must	得念書	- must study
				得買	- must buy (it)
		de P:	(particle which, together with a resultative complement, forms a potential resultative compound)	說得很kwài	- speaks very fast
145.	懂	dǔng V:	understand	不懂	- do not understand
				很 nán 懂	- very hard to understand
146.	夠 够 彀	gòu SV:	be sufficient, enough	夠了	- enough
				不夠	- not enough
147.	意	yì BF:	meaning; intention	意思	- meaning
				有意思	- interesting
				沒意思	- dull, uninteresting
				ywàn 意	- wish to, willing to

148.	思	sž	BF: 意思	意思	- meaning
149.	就	jyòu	A: only, just, then, (at once)	就有一毛錢	- only have ten cents
				吃了飯就去	- will go right after eating
150.	會 会	hwèi	AV: can, know how to,	會說話	- know how to talk (in the sense of being eloquent)
				會作事	- know how to work (capable)
			(Pronounced hwěi in the combination yi-hwěi-er)	一會兒	- (in) a moment
151.	能	néng	AV: can, be able to	不能去	- cannot go
				能買	- can buy

B. Sentences

1. 天一 lyàng, 弟弟就 chĭ來.
2. 坐火車去可 jēn 貴.
3. 他的意思我不懂 dzěn 麼 bàn.
4. 你來晚了, 得跑進去.

L. 33

5. 小hái子吃東西. 吃的很màn.

6. 你想沒有手, dzěn麼能寫字.

7. 中wǔ, 吃了一個鐘頭的飯.

8. 要是夠用,就別 dzài 買了.

9. 會作中gwo飯. 不一定會說中文.

10. 要是你都懂了,就不必念了.

11. 你有表麼? Syàn在是甚麼時候了?

12. 我的表九dyǎn半了, 不知道 dwèi 不dwèi?

13. 要是你不 ywàn意作,就別作了.

14. 那兩個字的意思. 我都不懂.

15. 這syē dyǎn心不是你的. 請你放下.

16. 爲甚麼他父親一看見你 就生chi?

17. 買這個 fáng子七萬八千九百kwài錢不夠.

18. 今天是甚麼日子? 你父母來的很早.

19. 他是一九五七年六月八hàu下wǔ 三dyǎn四
十分走的.

20. 上月母親用四百kwài líng九毛錢買了一
個小表.

21. 哥哥出去了chà不多七八個鐘頭了.
一會兒就回來.

C. Story

有一個中gwo人 syìng王. 有一年,他的一位日本朋友,請他到日本去看看. 他不會說日本話, 所以他要 gēn 他朋友 sywé.

他的日本朋友 dwèi 他說:「你到日本來,不能說日本話不要jǐn. 你可以用 bǐ 寫中gwo字,日本人就懂你的意思了.」

所以王先生沒 sywé 日本話就到日本去了.

有一天,王先生到一個日本飯 gwǎn 兒去吃飯. 他坐下了. 飯 gwǎn 兒裡的人就問他吃甚麼.

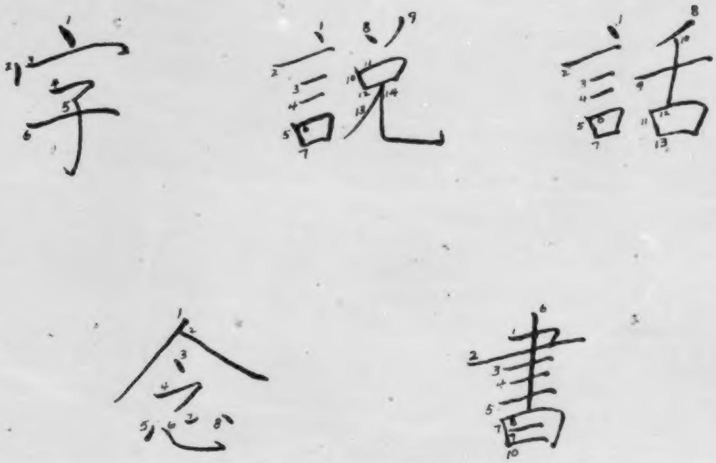
他想了想,就在 jř 上寫了一個「飯」字,一個「tāng」字. 可是他不知道「tāng」字在日本是「水」的意思, 所以那個飯 gwǎn 兒裡的人就

gěi了他一wǎn飯,一wǎn水. 他吃了飯,hē了水,就回去了.

後來,他dwèi他的朋友說:「日本飯不tswò,可是日本tāng不大好hē!」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 91-95)



B. Radicals

1.	子	(child, 39)	as in:	字
2.	言	(words,149)	as in:	説 話
3.	心	(heart, 61)	as in:	念
4.	曰	(speak, 73)	as in:	書

Lesson 34

1. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	Nín 在 中gwo 的 時候, 吃gwo 中gwo 飯 麼?	Did you have Chinese food when you were in China?
	B:	吃 gwo 一兩 tsž.	I have had it once or twice.
	A:	從前 nín 在 中gwo 作 甚麼?	What did you do in China formerly?
	B:	從前 我 在 中gwo 念書.	Formerly I studied in China.
	A:	後來 nín 到 那兒 去 念書 去了?	Afterwards where did you go to study?
	B:	後來 我到 Měigwo 來 念書 來了.	Afterwards I came to America to study.
	A:	Syàn 在 nín hái 念書 麼?	Are you still studying now?
	B:	Syàn 在 我 不 念書 了. 我 jyāu 書 了.	No, I am not studying now. I am teaching.
2.	A:	Nín 到 gwo Dégwo 麼?	Have you been to Germany?
	B:	我 到 gwo 一 tsž.	I have been there once.

L. 34

A:	Nín 那 tsż̀ jù了 多少 天?	How many days did you stay that time?
B:	Jù了 九個 月.	I stayed for nine months.
A:	Nín hēgwo Dégwo jyǒu 沒有?	Did you ever have German wine?
B:	Hēgwo 很多 tsż̀.	I have had it very many times.
A:	從前 nín 在 Dégwo 做甚麼?	What did you do in Germany formerly?
B:	從前我在 Dégwo 念書.	I studied in Germany formerly.
3. A:	Nín 去 gwo 日本 沒有?	Have you ever been to Japan?
B:	去 gwo 三 tsż̀.	I went there three times.
A:	Nín chwāngwo 日本 衣shang 沒有?	Have you ever worn Japanese clothing before?
B:	Chwāngwo 很多 tsż̀.	I have worn Japanese clothing many times.
A:	Nín chànggwo 日本 gē兒 沒有?	Have you ever sung Japanese songs before?
B:	Chànggwo 三 tsż̀.	I have sung Japanese songs three times.

A:	Nín sywégwo 日本話 沒有 ?	Have you ever studied Japanese before?
B:	Sywégwo, 可是 syàn在 都 wàng 了 .	Yes, I have, but now I have forgotten it all.
A:	從前 nín 在 日本做 甚麼 ?	Formerly what did you do in Japan?
B:	從前 我 在 日本 做 買賣 .	Formerly I was in business in Japan.
4. A:	Nín kāigwo fēijī 沒有?	Have you ever flown a plane?
B:	沒 kāigwo.	No, I haven't.
A:	Nín kāigwo dzàijùng 車 沒有?	Have you ever driven a truck before?
B:	沒 kāigwo. Tīng 說 不nán.	No, I haven't. I heard that it is not difficult.
A:	Nín kāigwo jàn 車 沒有 ?	Have you ever driven a tank before?
B:	Kāigwo 兩 tsz̀ jàn 車 .	Yes, I have driven one twice.
A:	Nín kāigwo chwán 沒有 ?	Have you ever operated a boat?

	B:	沒 kāigwo.	No, I haven't.
5.	A:	Nín 從前在 Lùjyūn dāng 甚麼?	What were you before in the Army?
	B:	我 從前在 Lùjyūn dāng yíngjǎng.	Formerly I was a battalion commander in the Army.
	A:	Nín 後來 dāng 甚麼?	Later what were you?
	B:	我 後來 dāng twánjǎng.	Later I was a regimental commander.
	A:	Syàn在 nín dāng 甚麼 ?	What are you now?
	B:	我 syàn在 dāng shr̄jǎng.	I am now a division commander.
6.	A:	Nín 以前 在 jyūndwèi dāng 甚麼?	What were you formerly in the Armed Forces?
	B:	我 以前 dāng bīng.	I was a soldier formerly.
	A:	Nín syàn在 dāng 甚麼 ?	What are you now?
	B:	我 syàn在 dāng bānjǎng.	I am now a squad leader.
	A:	Nín 以後 想 dāng 甚麼 ?	What do you want to be later?
	B:	我 甚麼 都 不 想 dāng 了.	I don't want to be anything.

162

7.	A:	Syàn 在十二 dyǎn 了. 中飯你們都吃 gwo 了 ba.	It is 12 o'clock now. All of you have had your lunch, I suppose.
	B:	都吃 gwo 了，可是王中 shr̀ hái 沒吃 ne，因為他今天中 wǔ 在 chúfáng 裡做事.	Yes, but Corporal Wang hasn't had his yet because he worked in the kitchen today.
	A:	下 wǔ 要念的 syīn kè 你們都看 gwo 了麼?	Have you read the new lesson that we are going to study this afternoon?
	B:	他們都看 gwo 了. 我不大 shūfu, 所以 hái 沒看 ne.	All of them have. I don't feel very well, therefore I haven't read it yet.

II. Basic Dialogue

Bái:	Lǐ 先生, nín 好麼?	How are you Mr. Lǐ?
Lǐ:	很好. 你知道在中gwo有 jàn事了麼?	Very well. Do you know that there is a war in China?
Bái:	我 tīng說了一dyǎn兒, 可是不大知道.	I heard a little about it, but I do not know very much about it.
Lǐ:	前天他們jyàu 王上 syàu 那 twán 到 Táiwān 去.	Col Wang's regiment was ordered to go to Taiwan day before yesterday.
Bái:	他們甚麼時候走?	When are they leaving?
Lǐ:	後天走.	They are leaving day after tomorrow.
Bái:	王上 syàu 以前 dǎgwo jàng 沒有?	Had Col Wang ever fought before?
Lǐ:	Dǎgwo 十 jǐtsž 了.	He fought more than ten times before.
Bái:	從前他在 Fàgwo dǎgwo jàng 麼?	Did he ever fight in France before?

Lǐ:	在 Fàgwo, 在 Dégwo 都 dǎgwo jàng.	He had fought both in France and Germany.
Bái:	Tīng說 nín 從前也 dǎgwo jàng, nín 從前 dǎjàng 的時候一定很有 míng.	I heard you also were in the war formerly; you must have been very famous then.
Lǐ:	不 gǎndāng, 不 gǎndāng.	You flatter me.
Bái:	以前在 Dégwo dǎjàng 的那 syē 有 míng 的 jyūngwān, nín 都 rènshr ma?	Do you know all those famous officers who fought in Germany before?
Lǐ:	Chà 不多都 rènshr. 那時候你父親也 gēn 我們在一 kwài 兒 dǎjàng.	I know most of them. At that time your father was together with us in the war.
Bái:	Dwèi 了. 我父親 gàusunggwo 我, nín gěi 他 jyèshàu 了很多有 míng 的 jyūngwān.	That is right. My father told me that you introduced him to very many famous officers.
Lǐ:	他也 gěi 我 jyèshaugwo 很多有 míng 的 jyūngwān.	He introduced me to very many famous officers too.

Bái:	有一位 王 Shr̄jǎng, nín rèn得麼?	There is a Division Commander Wáng; do you know him?
Lǐ:	Rèn得. 本來我不rèn得他，後來你父親 tì 我們兩個 jyèshau, 就是很好的朋友了.	Yes, I do. I didn't know him until your father introduced the two of us. Then we became very good friends.
Bái:	這 tsž jàn事, 他們都有大 pàu 麼?	In this war, do both sides have artillery guns?
Lǐ:	甚麼都有. Hái有 hwǒjyàn.	They have everything. They have rockets also.
Bái:	有沒有 hwǒjyànpàu?	Do they have bazookas?
Lǐ:	一定都有 hwǒjyànpàu.	Certainly they do.
Bái:	Nín 上 tsž dǎjàng的時候有 hwǒjyàntǔng 麼?	Did you have rocket launchers the last time you were in the war?
Lǐ:	本來沒有，後來有了.	We didn't have them at first, but we had them later.

Bái:	Nín 上 tsz̀ jàn 事 以後, 到那兒 去了?	Where did you go after the last war?
Lǐ:	以後 我 到 Yīnggwo 去了.	After that I went to England.
Bái:	我 父親 有 一個 Yīnggwo 朋友 Syìng Lǐ, jyàu 大 wèi. Nín rènshr 麼?	My father had an English friend whose last name is Li and first name is David. Do you know him?
Lǐ:	是不是 lyǎn 很 cháng, 手 也 很 cháng 的 那個 Lǐ 大 wèi?	Is it the David Li who has a long face and very long hands?
Bái:	Dwèi 了.	That is he.
Lǐ:	我 rènshr 他.	I know him.
Bái:	這 ts̀z nín 不必 去 dǎjàng 了 ba.	I don't suppose you need to go to war this time.
Lǐ:	不必, 可是 王 上 syàu 要 我 到 Táiwān 去 bāng 他 máng.	I don't have to, but Col Wáng wants me to go to Taiwan and help him.

Vocabulary

81.	běnlái	本來	MA:	originally
82.	bùgǎndāng!	不敢當	IE:	you flatter me!
83.	chyántyān	前天	(MA) N:	day before yesterday
84.	dǎ	打	V:	fight
84.1	dǎjàng	打仗	VO:	fight a battle, make war
85.	-gwo	過	P:	(experiential suffix to verbs)
86.	hòutyān	後天	(MA) N:	day after tomorrow
87.	hwǒjyàn	火箭	N:	rocket
87.1	hwǒjyànpàu	火箭炮	N:	bazooka
87.2	hwǒjyàntǔng	火箭筒	N:	rocket launcher
88.	jànshr̀	戰事	N:	warfare
89.	jyèshau	介紹	V:	introduce
90.	rènde	認得	V:	know, recognize, be acquainted with
90.1	rènshr	認識	V:	know, recognize, be acquainted with
91.	yǐchyán	以前	MA:	previously; formerly
92.	yǐhòu	以後	MA:	hereafter: thereafter
93.	yǒumíng	有名	SV:	prominent, well-known, famous

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Verb suffix gwò

1.1 When it is desired to indicate that an action has or has not ever been experienced, the verb suffix -gwo is used with either the positive or the negative form of the verb.

Nǐ chr̄le Jūnggwo fàn le ma?	Did you eat the Chinese food?
Wǒ chr̄le Jūnggwo fàn le.	I ate the Chinese food.
Nǐ chr̄gwo Jūnggwo fàn ma?	Have you ever had any Chinese food?
Wǒ chr̄gwo Jūnggwo fàn.	I have had Chinese food before.
Nǐ dàu tā jyā chyùle ma?	Did you go to his house?
Wǒ dàu tā jyā chyùle.	I went to his house.
Nǐ dàu tā jyā chyùgwo ma?	Have you ever been to his house?
Wǒ dàu tā jyā chyùgwo.	I have been to his house.
Jyòujīnshānde bàu nǐ kànle ma?	Did you read the San Francisco newspapers?
Jyòujīnshānde bàu wǒ kànle.	I read the San Francisco newspapers.
Jyòujīnshānde bàu nǐ kàngwo ma?	Have you ever seen San Francisco newspapers?
Jyòujīnshānde bàu wǒ kàngwo.	I have seen San Francisco newspapers.

Translate the following:

1) Have you ever been to that restaurant?

2) Yes, I have.

3) Did you go to that restaurant yesterday?

4) Yes, I did.

5) Have you read this book before?

6) Yes, I have.

7) Did you read that book last week?

8) Yes, I did.

9) Why are you studying Japanese now? Haven't you studied it before?

10) I have studied Japanese before, but I have forgotten it. Therefore, I am studying it again.

1.2 The verb suffix -*gwo* is also used to indicate past tense but indicates little more than what is indicated by *-le*. In this use, the particle -*le* is accompanied by -*gwo*, therefore there will be no confusion between the -*gwo* indicating an action has or has not ever been experienced and the -*gwo* indicating past tense.

Nǐ chr̄gwo R̀bĕn fàn ma?	Have you ever eaten Japanese food?
Wǒ chr̄gwo R̀bĕn fàn.	I have had Japanese food before.
or Wǒ méichr̄gwo R̀bĕn fàn.	I have never had Japanese food before.
Nǐ chr̄gwo jūngfàn *le* ma?	Have you had lunch?
Wǒ chr̄gwo*le.*	I had it already.
or Wǒ (hái) méichr̄ *ne*.	I haven't had it yet.

2. General relative time

Taking the immediate present as a pivot, general relative time is expressed by time words as the following. These words are "time when" expressions and are movable adverbs.

syàndzài	now, at present
tsúngchyán	formerly
yǐchyán	previously, heretofore
hòulai	afterwards, later on (past)
yǐhòu	hereafter, afterwards (future)

Tsúngchyán tā hěn máng, syàndzài tā bùmángle.	Formerly he was busy, but not now.
Syàndzài tā nyànshū, yǐhòu tā yàu jyāushū.	Now he studies, afterwards he will teach.
Yǐchyán tā dzài Jūnggwo dāng bīng.	Previously he was a soldier in China.
Yǐchyán tā chángcháng yǒu bìng, syàndzài bùcháng yǒubìng.	Formerly he was often sick, but not often now.
Tā háidz tsúngchyán hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà, syàndzài dōu wàngle.	His children knew how to speak Chinese formerly, but they have forgotten it all now.

Translate the following:

1) Formerly he lived in New York, and now he lives in San Francisco.

2) I am studying Chinese now; later on I will go to China.

L. 34

3) I am not busy now, but I will be very busy later on.

4) Formerly cars were not very expensive, but they are now.

5) I have learned to use chopsticks. Later when I eat Chinese food, I will use them.

6) Formerly you often spoke Chinese. Why don't you speak it anymore?

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

The uses of verb suffix gwo

A: To indicate that an action has or has not ever been experienced:

我坐gwo fēijī, 可是 沒 kāigwo fēijī.	I have traveled in a plane but have never operated one.

Examples:

1) 你吃gwo 中gwo 飯,可是 沒hēgwo 中gwo jyǒu ba:	I suppose you've eaten Chinese food but have never drunk Chinese wine, have you?
2) 你 dǎgwo jàng 沒有?	Have you ever fought a battle?
3) 你看見 gwo dǎjàng 沒有?	Have you ever seen a war being fought?
4) 他到gwo Fàgwo, 你 到 gwo 沒到gwo Fàgwo?	He has been to France before, have you been to France or haven't you?
5) 我沒到Fàgwo 去gwo, 我就到 日本去gwo.	I've never been to France. I've only been to Japan.
6) 你們用 中gwo bǐ 寫gwo 字麼?	Have you ever written with a Chinese pen?
7) 我們沒用gwo 中 gwo bǐ 寫字. 我們用gwo 日本bǐ 寫字.	We've never written with a Chinese pen. We've written with a Japanese pen.
8) 這個 wū子上syàu 進來- gwo 沒進來 gwo?	Has the Colonel ever come into this room?

Exercise:

a. Make two phrases by attaching the suffix gwo to each verb. First, in positive sense with the first noun; second, in negative sense with the second noun.

	Verb	Noun
	learn	singing, composing songs
Ex.	a) sywégwo	chànggēr
	b) méisywégwo	syě gēr
1	read	Chinese newspaper, Russian newspaper
2	buy	military uniform, pistol
3	wear	ordinary hat, helmet
4	tell	American story, Chinese story
5	use	bazooka, rocket launcher
6	ask	our officer, your officer
7	help	England, Germany

b. Answer the following orally:

1) Syānsheng gěi nǐmen shwōgwo gùshr ma?
2) Jàu Tàitai méigei nǐmen dzwògwo dyǎnsyin ma?
3) Wǒ gěi nǐmen jyèshaugwo wǒ nyǔer méiyou?
4) Tā bǎ nèitsžde jànshr̀ gàusunggwo nǐ méiyou?
5) Nǐ dzài jèige wūdz chōugwo yān méichōugwo?
6) Nǐ báityan dzài jèr shwèigwo jyàu méishwèigwo ?

7) Nǐ yùnggwo méiyùnggwo hwǒjyànpàu gēn hwǒjyàntǔng?

8) Nǐ gēn něiwei yǒumíngde rén tángwo hwà?

c. Change the following declarative sentences into four different interrogative sentences; the first two into simple types, the second two into choice types:

Nèige lóu nǐ méishàngchyugwo.

(simple types) 1a. Nèige lóu nǐ shàngchyugwo ma?

b. Nèige lóu nǐ méishàngchyugwo ma?

(choice types) 2a. Nèige lóu nǐ shàngchyugwo méishàngchyugwo?

b. Nèige lóu nǐ shàngchyugwo méiyou?

1) Yèli nèige wūdz nǐ jìnchyugwo.

2) Jèige lóulide syǎuhár chūchyugwo.

3) Lóushangde yǐdz méibānsyàlaigwo.

4) Tāng Lyánjǎng méibǎ kǎbīnchyāng dàigwolai.

5) Lǐ Twánjǎng dàu Běipíng chyùgwo.

6) Chyùnyán nǐ méidau hwǒchējàn chyù jyēgwo rén.

7) Nǐ méigēn Yíngjǎng shēnggwo chì.

8) Nǐ méisùnggwo dūngsyi gěi tā.

B: To indicate past tense, but indicates little more than what is indicated by -le

L. 34

Q: 早上的 bàu 你看gwo了麼?	Have you (already) read the morning paper?
A: 早上的 bàu 我看gwo了. 可是早飯我 hái 没吃 ne.	I've already read the morning paper, but I haven't eaten breakfast yet.

Examples:

1) 那個字我們寫gwo好 jǐtsz̀ 了.這個没寫ne.	We've written that character several times already, but we haven't written this one yet.
2) Páijǎng 前天來 gwo 了. 不 dzài 來了.	The platoon leader came day before yesterday (already). He won't be coming again.
3) 我去 jyēgwo 他了,可是他没到.	I've been there to meet him, but he didn't arrive.
4) 這 sye jyù 子念gwo 了, 我都 wàng 了.	I've read these sentences, (but) I've forgotten them all.
5) 前天我到火車 jàn-去 gwo 了, 後天 hái 得 dzài 去麼?	I've already been to the railway station day before yesterday. Do I still have to go again day after tomorrow?

Exercise:

Answer the following orally:

1) Gāngtsái wǒ wèngwo nǐ le méiyou?

2) Nǐmen dōu chr̄gwo jūngfàn le ma?

3) Nǐ jyàngwo tā le ma? Wèishémma tā méilái ne?

4) Tā yǐjíng shwōgwo "Dzàijyàn!" le, dzěmma hái bùdzǒu ne?

5) Jèisye dz̀ syānsheng jyāugwo wǔlyòutsz̀ le, nǐ dzěmma hái búrènde?

6) Wǒ gěi tāmen jyèshaugwole, dzěmma tā shwō búrènshr tā?

7) Jīntyān hēgwo lyǎngtsz̀ chá le, bùnéng dzài hēle ba?

Pattern 2

General relative time

The uses of 以前，本來，後来，以後，

以前他在 sywésyàu 教書，後來他 dāng bīng 了. Syàn 在他是一位 shrjǎng. 他 syīwang 以後 hái 在 lùjyūn 作事.	Formerly he taught at school, later he became a soldier. Now he is a division commander. He hopes that in the future he will keep on working in the Army.

Examples:

1) 我們 sywésyàu 以前不 jyàu 這個 míng 字.	Our school formerly did not have this name.
2) 從前他 chángchang 很 gāusyìng, 後來有 bìng 了，就不說話了.	Formerly he was often happy. Later he became ill and would no longer speak.
3) 本來我不大明 bai. 後來你 gàusung 我，我就懂了.	Originally I did not quite understand. After you told me I understood.
4) Syàn 在天 hēi 的很早. 以後 hēi 的 hái 早.	The day gets dark very early at present. It will get dark even earlier later on.
5) 以後我們要 sywé dzěn- 麼用火 jyàn, 火 jyànpàu gēn 火 jyàntǔng.	Later we want to learn how to use the rocket, the bazooka, and the rocket launcher.
6) 吃 wǔ 飯以前他 gàu- sung 我了. Gwò 了 jǐ 分鐘我就 wàng 了.	Before lunch he told me. A few minutes later I had forgotten already.
7) 以後要是有人說你 chànggē 兒 chàng 的可 jēn 好 tīng. 你就說「不 gǎndāng !」	In the future if someone says you sing well, you can (then) say "You flatter me".

L. 34

Exercise:

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) Formerly I didn't know him. Now we are good friends.

2) Several years ago we had been living in Shanghai. Later we moved here.

3) That lady previously was only a country girl, now she is a famous dress maker in New York.

4) Our school originally was a school where only Japanese was taught.

5) From now on let's get up at 6:30 in the morning.

6) If you don't have enough sleep very often, you'll become sick afterwards.

7) If you read Chinese every day, you will certainly be able to write letters in Chinese afterwards.

8) Now I am working at night. I hope to be able to work during the day later on.

Homework

(Pattern Review)

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Yǐchyán nǐ yíge Jūnggwo dz̀ yě búrènshr ma?

2) Shàngtsz̀ Jūnggwo gēn Řběn dǎle dwōshaunyánde jàng?
(time when) (time spent)

3) Yíge dìfang yìyǒu jànshr dūngsyi jyòu gwèile ma?

4) Nǐ syǎng něisye gwó gēn něisye gwó jyòu yàu dǎjàngle?

5) Yǐhòu yàushr yǒu jànshr̀ Ègwo jyòu yàu yùng hwǒjyàn ma?

6) Nǐ néng bǎ nǐ rènshrde Jūnggwo dz̀ dōu syěchulai ma?

7) Yǒu méiyou sywésheng běnlái yàu nyàn Fàwén, syàndzài nyànle Jūngwén le?

8) Jīntyān dzǎushang nǐ chǐlaide dzǎu budzǎu? Nǐ shr̀ jǐdyǎn jūng chǐlaide?

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos. 152-158)

152.	美	měi	BF:	America, American	美國	- U.S.A.
			SV:	be beautiful	美國chì車	- American automobile
153.	國 (国) 国	gwó	M/N:	country, nation	Dé 國	- Germany
					中國話	- Chinese language
154.	學 (学) 斈	sywé	V:	study, learn	學生	- students
			AV:	learn to, study how to	學校	- school
					學 hwàhwà兒	- learn to paint (pictures)
155.	校	syàu	BF:	school	學校	- school
					上校	- Colonel
					中校	- Lt Col
					少校	- Major
156.	教	jyāu	V:	teach	教書	- teach
					教我 kāi車	- teach me how to drive

157. 唱 chàng V: sing 唱歌兒 - sing (song)

158. 歌 gē N: song 美國歌 - American song

B. Sentences

1. 你有多少美國朋友？
2. 八十多位.
3. 他們都會唱歌兒麼？
4. 都會唱歌兒.
5. 你在甚麼學校念書？
6. 城裡頭的學校都不够大.
7. 教 Yīng 文的是王先生.
8. 王上校昨天晚上走了.
9. 你明天有工夫沒有？方少校要請你吃中飯.
10. 有. Shéi 請我吃飯. 我都去.
11. 你的手表放在那兒了？
12. 我的手表太 jyòu 了. 我 gěi 了我女兒了.

13. 我父親,母親,哥哥,弟弟,都在日本.

14. 你的買賣很好麼?

15. 去年不大好. 今年我可不知道.

16. 我想買 dyǎn 兒中國茶. 因為我沒
hēgwo 中國茶.

17. 中國茶不貴. 別的東西也不貴.

18. 你們的 dyǎn 心好吃麼?

19. 你不必 wèn 我了. 我們這兒甚麼東西
都好吃.

20. 從這兒到那兒遠不遠?

21. 很近. 在城外頭.

22. 要是不遠, 我可以跑 je 去.

23. 從這個路跑 je 去, 很有意思. 一定
有很多人要看你跑.

24. 我不懂為甚麼他們要看我跑.

25. 因為在路上就有 chì 車, 沒有人跑.
要是你在路上跑, 別人都 syǐhwan
看一看.

L. 34

C. Story

在我們學校念書的學生 chà 不多都沒到 -gwo 中國. 可是他們都會說一 dyǎn 兒中文, 也會唱 jǐ 個中國歌兒, 還能 rèn 得不少中國字. Běn 來這個學校就教日文. 可是後來中文日文 gēn 很多別的外國話我們學校都教. 我 syàn 在學的是中文. 前天我 gēn 一位先生說. 我沒吃 gwo 中國飯. 昨天先生請我到城裡去吃中國飯, nái 請了他的女朋友王小 jye. 王小 jye chwān 了一件中國衣 shang. 我從前沒看見 gwo 中國衣 shang, 我 jywé 得中國衣 shang 很好看. 王小 jye 教我 hē 中國茶. 又 wèn 我要不要 hē 中國 jyǒu. 我知道他們的意思是想請我到一個地方去 hējyǒu. 我說:「今年不行, 明年二月我就能 hējyǒu 了」因為我不能去 hējyǒu, 所以到了九點鐘我就一個人回

學校了.

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 96-100)

前 後 裡

(裏)

外 頭

B. Radicals

1. 刂 (knife, 18) as in: 前
2. 彳 (to pace,60) as in: 後
3. 衤 (clothes,145) as in: 裡
4. 衣 (clothes,145) as in: 裏
5. 夕 (evening, 36) as in: 外
6. 頁 (heading,181) as in: 頭

C. Dictionary Drill

Sixty Common Chinese Radicals - "Action" Group

Radical Number	Name	Radical	English Meaning	Example
60	shuāng-li-jén-erh	彳	Left Step	後 很 從 德
66	fǎn-wén-erh	攵 攴	Tap	收 放 教 敘
76	ch'ièn	欠	Owe	次 歌 歡
113	shìh	示 示 礻	Indicate	社 禮 票 祟
162	tsǒu-chǐh-erh	辶 辵 辶	Run and Stop	近 這 過 遠
184	shíh	飠 食	Eat	飯 餓 館 養

1. Exercise: Find from the dictionary Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

祝			餐		
彿			歡		
故			祇		
逐			律		
飾			逝		
款			飼		
蝕			政		
遮			徽		
禁			欲		

2. Home Work: Find from the dictionary Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
徒			哄		
返			摩		
禄			速		
循			蜀		
欣			征		
敵			役		
祕			微		
飢			敏		
敗			歉		
飲			祥		

LESSON 35

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	你 吃飯 以前 作甚麼?	What do you do before eating?
	B:	我 吃飯 以前 hē dyǎn 兒 水.	I drink some water before eating.
	A:	你 shwèijyàu 以前 作 甚麼?	What do you do before going to bed?
	B:	我 shwèijyàu 以前 念書.	I read before going to bed.
	A:	你 出 mén 以前 作甚麼?	What do you do before going out?
	B:	我 出 mén 以前 gwān 上 chwānghu.	I close the windows before going out.
2.	A:	王 先生 一九四五年 在 那兒?	Where was Mr. Wáng in 1945?
	B:	在 Dé 國.	He was in Germany.
	A:	在 那兒 jù 了 jǐ 年?	How many years did he stay in Germany?
	B:	Jù 了 三年.	He stayed there three years.

L. 35

	A:	三年 以後 到 那兒 去了？	Where did he go after those three years?
	B:	三年 以後 到 Fà國 去了.	He went to France after those three years.
	A:	他 在 Fà國 jù了 jǐ年？	How many years did he stay in France?
	B:	Jù了 兩年 .	He stayed two years.
	A:	兩年 以後 到 那兒 去了？	Where did he go after those two years?
	B:	兩年 以後 到 Yīng國 去了.	He went to England after those two years.
3.	A:	你 měi天 早上 chǐ來 以後 作甚麼？	What do you do after getting up every morning?
	B:	我 měi天 早上 chǐ來 以後 看 bàu.	I read newspapers after getting up every morning.
	A:	你 下kè 以後 作甚麼？	What do you do after class?
	B:	我 下kè 以後 回jyā.	I go home after class.

	A:	你 回jyā 以後 作 甚麼?	What do you do after you have returned home?
	B:	我 回 jyā 以後， lìkè 吃飯.	I eat right after I have returned home.
	A:	你 吃飯 以後 作 甚麼?	What do you do after eating?
	B:	我 吃飯 以後 chōuyān.	I smoke after eating.
4.	A:	吃飯的 時候 可以 說話 麼?	Is it permitted to talk while eating?
	B:	吃飯的 時候 可以說話	It is all right to talk while eating.
	A:	念書的 時候 可以 吃 táng 麼 ?	Is eating candy permitted while studying?
	B:	念書的 時候 不 可以 吃 táng.	No, it is not permitted to eat candy while studying.
	A:	Kāi chì 車的 時候 可以 hējyǒu 麼?	Is drinking permitted while driving?

L. 35

	B:	Kāi chì 車的時候不可以 hējyǒu, kāi chì 車以前也不可以 hējyǒu.	Drinking is not permitted while driving, nor is it permitted before driving.
5.	J:	王小jye, nín 看, shéi 來了?	See who is coming, Miss Wáng?
	W:	Lǐ 太太 a! Lǐ 太太, nín 好 a?	It is Mrs. Lǐ. How are you, Mrs. Lǐ?
	L:	很好. 王小jye, nín的衣shang jēn 好看 a!	Very well. Your dress is really pretty, Miss Wáng.
	W:	不太好看. 是我從中國 dài 來的.	Not very pretty. I brought it from China.
	J:	Lǐ 太太, nín的 màu子也 jēn 好 a!	Your hat is also really pretty, Mrs. Lǐ.
	L:	不太好. Jāng 太太, nín的 syé jēn 好 a!	Not very pretty. Your shoes are really good, Mrs. Jāng.
	J:	不很好. 昨天買的.	Not very good. I bought them yesterday.

W:	你們 看，shéi 來了？	See who is coming?
L:	Bái 小 jye a.	Miss Bái.
B:	你們 都好 a?	How are you all?
L:	都好。昨天 你 唱 gē 兒 唱的 jēn 好 a.	We are all fine. You sang really well yesterday.
B:	不 gǎndāng. 不 gǎndāng.	You flatter me.
W:	Nín 唱 gē 兒 以前 説的 那 jǐjyù 話，也 説的 jēn 好 a.	The few remarks you made before singing were also really well spoken.
B:	Nín 別 kèchi 了.	You are too polite.

II. Basic Dialogue

1. Bái:	Lǐ 先生, nín 昨天 說的 jàn事, 是 shéi gēn shéi 作 jàn?	Who were the combatants in the war you mentioned yesterday, Mr. Lǐ?
Lǐ:	是 Jyǎ* 國 gēn Yǐ* 國.	It was between countries A and B.
Bái:	Nín 看 他們 這tsż 作 jàn, 要用 ywán子dàn 麼?	Do you think that they will use the atomic bomb in this war?
Lǐ:	我看 他們 都要用 ywán子 dàn.	I think both of them will use the atomic bomb.
Bái:	Nín jywé得 我們 yīngdāng bāngju shéi?	Which side do you think we should help?
Lǐ:	我看, 我們 shéi 也 不 bāngju.	I don't think we should help either side.

* Jyǎ and Yǐ are the first two of the ten celestial stems; used hypothetically for persons or countries as the one, the other: as A, B, in geometry, etc. (Bǐng for C).

	Bái:	從前 Jyǎ國 bāngjugwo 我們，我 jywé得 我們 yīngdāng bāngju 他們.	Formerly Country A helped us; I feel we should help her.
	Lǐ:	可是，syàn在 Yǐ國 也 是 我們的 朋友.	But Country B is also our friend now.
	Bái:	為甚麼 他們 老是 作jàn?	Why do they always fight?
	Lǐ:	因為 有 兩三個 地方，兩國 都 想要.	Because there are two or three pieces of territory which both want to have.
2.	**Bái:**	Nín 甚麼 時候走?	When are you leaving?
	Lǐ:	我 不知道，可是 我 今天 就 得 到 Jyòujīnshān 去.	I don't know, but I have to go to San Francisco today.
	Bái:	Nín 走 以前，hái 可以 gěi 我 說 一個 syàu 話 麼?	Can you tell me one more joke before you leave?
	Lǐ:	Dwèi不 chǐ. 今天 我 tè別 máng，所以 我 不能 gěi 你 說 syàuhwa 了.	Sorry. I am extraordinarily busy today and can't tell you any more jokes.

L. 35

Bái:	Nín 到了 Jyòujīnshān 以後，就可以知道甚麼時候出國了麼？	Will you be able to know when you will leave the country as soon as you arrive at San Francisco?
LǏ:	我到了那兒就知道了.	Yes, I will be able to know as soon as I arrive there.
Bái:	Nín dǎswan gěi 我寫 syìn 麼？	Do you intend to write me?
LǏ:	到了 Jyòujīnshān 以後，就 gěi 你寫 syìn.	I will write you after I arrive in San Francisco.
Bái:	Nín 走的時候，LǏ 太太一定要 kū ba?	Would Mrs. LǏ be in tears when you leave?
LǏ:	他也 gēn 我一kwài 兒去.	She is going with me.
Bái:	LǏ 太太知道麼？	Does Mrs. LǏ know?
LǏ:	知道了.	Yes, she does.
Bái:	甚麼時候知道的？	When did she know?
LǏ:	今天早上知道的，所以他真 gāusyìng.	She knew it this morning, and consequently she is very happy.

Bái:	他 syàn 在 一定 syàu 了.	She must be smiling now.
Lǐ:	Dwèi 了. Píngcháng 他 不 chángcháng syàu. 今天 早上 我 gàusung 他 以後, 他 就 老 syàu 了.	That is right. Usually she doesn't smile often, but she smiles a lot since I told her this morning.
Bái:	Lǐ 太太 在 那兒 ne?	Where is Mrs. Lǐ?
Lǐ:	在 車 裡頭 děngje 我 ne. Syàn 在 我們 lìkè 就 走.	She is waiting for me in the car. We must be on our way right now.
Bái:	Syīwang nín 一路 píngān.	Wish you a pleasant journey.
Lǐ:	你 明天 去 jǎu Jāng 先生 去 念 Yīng 文 ba.	You'd better go to Mr. Jāng for your English lessons tomorrow.
Bái:	我 不 念 了, 因為 我 沒 工夫. 可是 我 弟弟 想 念.	I am not going to study anymore because I don't have time. However, my younger brother wishes to study.

L. 35

Vocabulary

94.	a	啊	P:	(sentence suffix, see grammar)
95.	dǎswan	打算	V:	plan to
96.	dz̀jǐ	自己	N:	self, oneself
97.	dzwòjàn	作戰	VO: N:	make war, combat operation
98.	jywéde	覺得	V:	feel that, consider
99.	kàn	看	V:	see, think, consider
100.	lǎu	老	A:	always, keep on
101.	píngcháng	平常	SV:	be ordinary, common
102.	syàu	笑	V:	laugh or smile; laugh at
102.1	syàuhwa	笑話	V: N:	make fun of a joke
103.	tèbyé	特別	SV: A:	be special, distinctive specially
104.	yílù-píngān	一路平安	IE:	a pleasant journey!
105.	...yǐchyán	以前	MA:	before....., ...ago
105.1	chyán-	前	N:	front: former, ...ago
106.	...yǐhòu	以後	MA:	after.....
107.	ywándždàn	原子彈	N:	atomic bomb

L. 35

107.1	ywándž	原子	N: SV:	atom atomic
107.2	ywándžnéng	原子能	N:	atomic energy

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Specific relative time

Taking some point of reference as a pivot, specific relative time is expressed by using one of the following expressions after the clause which gives the point of reference.

yǐchyán	before
yǐhòu	after
de shŕhou	when

Shàngkède shŕhou bùkéyi shwō Yǐngwén.	Talking in English is not permitted in class.
Shàngkè yǐchyán kéyi chōuyān.	Smoking is allowed before class.
Syàkè yǐhòu yě kéyi chōuyān.	Smoking is also allowed after class.
Nǐ lái yǐchyǎn gěi wǒ syěsyìn.	Write me before you come.
Tā dzǒule yǐhòu, wǒmen jyou chūmén.	We will go out after he leaves.
Tā láide shŕhou wèn tā.	Ask him when he comes.
Wǒ dàule Jyòujǐnshān yǐhòu, jyou chyù jǎu nǐ.	I will look you up as soon as I arrive in San Francisco.

Note that the sentence: "Wǒ dàu jèige sywésyàu lái yǐchyán búhwèi shwō Jūngwén" is often said "Wǒ méi dàu jèige sywesyàu lái yǐchyán búhwèi shwō Jūngwén", without changing the meaning.

Translate the following:

1) I don't study before supper.
2) I write characters after I read the book.
3) We will give the children candy after they have eaten lunch.
4) Please say a few words before you sing.
5) Eat the fish after you have had the soup.
6) After I have moved, I will invite you to come to have dinner.
7) Please don't laugh yourself when you are telling a joke.
8) We will get up after it is light.
9) The children cannot go out to play after dark.

2. Sentence suffix a

The particle a adds nothing in content to the word or sentence to which it is affixed, but it changes the mood of the speaker, either making it more polite or more intimate, or showing surprise.

Nǐ hǎu a!	How are you !
Lǎu Jàu a !	Old Jàu !
Shr̀ shéi a?	Who is it?
Nín dzài jyā a !	Oh, you are at home !
Yílù-píngān a !	A pleasant journey to you !
Nín máng a !	Oh! You are busy.
Láujyà a !	Thank you for the trouble !

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Specific relative time

A: Shwèijyàu以前別吃東西	Don't eat (things) before going to bed.

Examples:

1) 三個月以前我們不在這兒.	Three months ago we were not here.
2) 先生(沒)說gù事以前, 先看看學生學gwo的字.	Before telling a story, the teacher took a look at the words the students had learned.
3) 今天早上(沒)上kè以前我們tán了一會兒話.	We chatted awhile before going to class this morning.
4) (沒)到飯gwăn兒去以前先想想jyàu甚麼tsài.	Before going to the restaurant, first think of what (you) want to order.
5) 很多學生老在下wŭ一dyăn鐘以前寫中國字.	Many students always write characters before one o'clock in the afternoon.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Lyăngge ywè yĭchyán nĭ jywéde Jūngwén hĕn rúngyi sywé ma?

2) Nĭ kàn syàlĭbài yĭchyán wŏmen néng bă jèibĕn shū dōu nyànle ma?

3) Nĭ jìnchéng yĭchyán, lău gāusung nĭ tàitai ma?

4) Mĕigwo rén méiyùng ywándždàn yĭchyán, R̆bĕn rén jr̄dau bujr̄dau?

5) Mĕigwo rén méichr̄ dyănsyin yĭchyán, yĕ hē dyăr jyŏu ma?

6) Nĭmen hwéijyā yĭchyán lău dĕi bă jèisye chwānghu gwānshang ba?

7) Màidūngsyide méigēn wǒmen shwōhwa yǐchyán wèishémma lǎu syān syàusyau?

8) Nǐ méidau jèige sywésyàu lái yǐchyán, jywéde Jūngwén hěn tèbyé ma?

9) Yàushr méishwèijyàu yǐchyán hē chá, nǐ jyòu bùnéng shwèijyàu ma?

10) Píngcháng syānsheng méiwèn sywésheng yǐchyán, syān jyàu míngdz ma?

11) Dǎjàng yǐchyán hěn dwō rén tīnggwo "ywándž" jèige míngdz ma?

12) Nǐ sywé Jūngwén yǐchyán, tīng rén shwōgwo Jūnggwo hwà ma?

13) Nǐ dzwótyan shr̀ bushr tyān lyàng yǐchyán chǐlaide?

14) Yàushr nǐ shwèijyàu yǐchyán chr̄de tài dwō, nǐ jywéde shūfu bùshūfu?

15) Syānsheng jìnlai yǐchyán, sywésheng dōu bǎ shū fàngdzai jwōdzshang ma?

B: 有的學生下(了) kè 以後不 cháng 說中國話.	There are some students who do not speak Chinese very often after class.

Examples:

1) 半年以後我們學看中國bàu.	Half a year later we (will) learn how to read a Chinese paper.
2) 我 dǎswan 兩個 lǐbài 以後再到syāng下去一tsz̀.	I plan on going to the countryside again two weeks from now.
3) 我看 dǎwán jàng 以後吃的chwān 的就都要pyányi 了.	I think that both food and clothing will become cheaper after the war.
4) 昨天我 gěi 他 jyèshau (了)以後,他 lìkè 就出去了.	He went out immediately after I had introduced him yesterday.

5) 後天我gěi 你jyèshau(3) 以後,請你別 lìkè 就走.	Please do not leave immediately after I have introduced you day after tomorrow.
6) 天 hēi 了 以後, Lyánjǎng dz̀jǐ bǎ 火jyàn sùng到那兒去的.	It was the company commander himself who delivered the rocket to that place after dark.
7) 很多人說了 syàu話 以後 dz̀jǐ 不syàu.	Many people do not laugh themselves after telling a joke.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Nǐ tyāntyān syàkè yǐhòu dàu nǎr chyù?

2) Péngyou bāng nǐde máng yǐhòu, nǐ yīngdāng shwō shémma?

3) Nǐ shwō syàuhwa yǐhòu, byéren búsyàu, nǐ jywéde bùshūfu ma?

4) Nǐ kàn dwōshau nyán yǐhòu wǒmen kéyi yùng ywándžnéng kāi chìchē?

5) Lyǎngge ywè yǐhòu nǐ háidz jyòu néng dz̀jǐ jānchilaile ma?

6) Gāngtsái wǒ wènle nèige sywésheng yǐhòu, wǒ yòu wèn shéi le?

7) Měigwo gēn R̀běn dzwòjàn yǐhòu, dàu R̀běn chyùde Měigwo rén dwō budwō?

8) Nǐ bǎ táng gěile háidz yǐhòu, tā jyòu bukūle ba?

9) Nǐ bǎ màudz sùnggei nǐ tàitai yǐhòu, tā hái shēngchì ma?

10) Nǐ sywéle fàng hwǒjyànpàu yǐhou, dǎswan jyāu syīn bīng dzěmma fàng ma?

11) Hòutyan nǐ syàle kè yǐhòu, néng bunéng tì wǒ bàn dyǎr shr̀?

12) Syānsheng shwōle lyǎngtsż yǐhou, yǒude sywésheng hái budǔng ma?

13) Gāngtsái wǒ shwōle nèijyù hwà yǐhou, nǐ lìkè jyòu míngbaile ma?

14) Shàngtsż Jūnggwo gēn Řběn dzwòjàn yǐhou, Jūnggwo hái yǒu Řběn rén méiyou?

15) Nǐmen bǎ jèiběn shū dōu nyànle yǐhou, hái yàu dzài nyàn jǐběn?

C: 我們上kè 的時候 不說Yīng文. We do not speak English during class.

Examples:

1) 一個人有bìng 的時候 不想吃東西.	A person does not feel like eating when he is ill.
2) 小hái子 甚麼 時候 chángchang kū?	When do little children cry very often?
3) 小hái 子 有 bìng 的時候 ài 不ài wán 兒 ?	Do little children like to play when they are sick?
4) 我太太 tè 别 ài 在 我很 máng 的時候gēn 我 說話.	My wife particularly likes to talk to me when I am very busy.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally:

1) Píngcháng sywésheng shémma shŕhou syědż?

2) Píngcháng sywésheng shàng dìyīkè shū de shŕhou jyòu syědż. Dwèi ma?

3) Píngcháng sywésheng dzài shàng dìjǐkè shū de shŕhou nyàn Jūnggwo dż?

4) Nǐ dìyítsż tīng syānsheng shwō Jūngwén de shŕhou, nǐ jywéde Jūngwén hěn tèbyé ma?

5) Nǐ sùng péngyou de shŕhou, nǐ shwō bushwō "Yīlù píng-ān"?

6) Kànjyan yíge rénde yīshang hĕn tèbyé de shŕhou, wèishémma buyīngdāng syàu?

7) Wŏ gĕi nĭ jyèshau yŏumíngde rén de shŕhou, nĭ dwèi tā shwō shémma?

8) Mĕigwo gēn R̆bĕn dzwòjàn de shŕhou, yùng méiyùng ywándz̆dàn?

9) Nĭ dàu Jūnggwo chyùde shŕhou, dăswan măi shémma dūngsyi?

10) Dz̀jĭ yíge rén kāichē de shŕhou, jywéde tèbyé lèi ma?

11) Wŏmen dzwò fēijī de shŕhou, kéyi bukéyi chōuyān?

12) Nyŭrén jànchilaide shŕhou, nánrén yĕ dĕi jànchilai ma?

13) Byéren chànggēr de shŕhou, wŏmen yīngdāng buyīngdāng tánhwà?

14) Nĭ kànjyan syáujye chūchyude shŕhou, nĭ tì tā kāimén ma?

15) Nĭ hē tāng de shŕhou, yùng shémma sháur?

Pattern 2

Sentence suffix a

Nín 好 a!	How are you?

Examples:

1) Jàu 先生,nín 好a?	Mr. Jàu, how are you?
2) 老太太 a! 你兒子的 bìng不要jĭn, 别 kū了.	Old Lady! Your son's illness is not serious. Don't cry!
3) 他那件 chènshān 多麼 tè别 a!	What a unique shirt he has!

Exercise:

Render the following sentences into Chinese, using the sentence suffix a to make it more polite or more intimate, or showing surprise:

1) How are you?

2) Old Jang! I have told you three times!

3) Who is that charming girl?

4) Did you make these refreshments yourself?

5) Why must we leave now?

6) Old Wang! I was particularly busy two weeks ago. That is why I didn't come to see you.

7) How is your wife? I would like to talk to her before I leave for Shanghai.

8) How beautiful your sister is! After you have introduced her to me, I will buy you some drinks.

9) How can I recognize one hundred characters two minutes after you teach me!

10) Mother! Please don't laugh at me when I speak Chinese.

Homework

Orally render the following sentences into Chinese:

1) What do you plan to do after you've had lunch?

2) After school I plan to buy two pairs of shoes for my son.

3) Does Lt. Wáng ordinarily tell jokes all the time?

4) Capt. Lǐ is very peculiar. He doesn't laugh when he tells jokes.

5) For how many years had Country A fought against Country B before 1942?

6) Which of the countries had the atomic bomb when they fought?

7) Old Jàu! Don't you know that atomic energy can be used in airplanes, cars, trains and ships?

8) Our Company Commander usually gets up before the sun rises.

V. READING

A. Characters (Nos. 159-166)

159.	門	mén	N:	door	出門	- go out (of the house)
					門外頭	- outside the door
			M:	(measure for artillery pieces)	兩門大pàu	- two artillery pieces
160.	關 闗 関 (关)	gwān	V:	close (up)	關上	- close
					關chwānghu	- close the window
					關je ne	- (It's) closed
161.	呌 叫	jyàu	V:	call (some one), is called, named	别叫他	- don't call him
					叫甚麼	- what is (it) called?
			CV:	tell, order; let; [by]	叫你去	- tells you to go
					别叫他吃	- don't let him eat
162.	開 (开)	kāi	V:	open; start away (train, bus, ship); operate (car)	開門	- open the door
					開chì車	- drive a car
					車開了	- train or car has left

163. 問	wèn	V:	ask, inquire of or about	別問我	- don't ask me
				問…好	- best regards to ......
164. 姓	syìng	N:	surname	貴姓?	- your (honorable) (sur)name?
		V:	be surnamed	我姓 Jāng	- my (sur)name is Jāng
165. 名	míng	BF:	name	名字	- given name
				有名	- famous, well-known
166. 誰	shéi (shwéi)	N:	who? whom? anyone	誰的?	- whose?
				誰來了?	- who came?
				誰都有	- everyone has (it)

B. Sentences

1. 美國有很多火 jyàn pàu, ywán 子 dàn.
2. 你出來的時候, 請別 bǎ 門關上.
3. 姓王的一進去就坐下寫字了.
4. 我問他:「你的名字叫甚麼?」他不懂.
5. 那位太太没教唱歌以前,先 hē dyǎn 兒水.
6. 誰老 ài 到有名的飯 gwǎn 兒去吃早飯?

7. 他 hē jyǒu 以後,開車開的 tè 別 kwài.

8. 我看兩百 kwài 錢就够了. 不必用兩萬.

9. 誰都 jywé 得在這兒作事很有意思.

10. 這個男 hái 子回 jyā 以前,老在學校念 dyǎn 兒書.

11. 學生都有中國姓, 可是不都有中國名字.

12. 六七十年以前一毛錢能買不少東西.

13. 父親在學校作事,老回來的很晚.

14. 你不必 bǎ 手放在 jwō 子下頭, 我 yǐjing 看見了.

15. 母親叫哥哥到城裡去買一件衣 shang; 因為路太遠, 他不 ywàn 意去.

C. Story

有一天, 四位在我弟弟那個學校教書的老先生,在一個火車 jàn 上 děng 火車.

他們姓甚麼,名字叫甚麼,我都 wàng 了.

一會兒火車來了. 他們問火車 jàn 上的人:「火車甚麼時候開?」 火車 jàn 上的人說:「syàn 在是八 dyǎn 五分. 火車八 dyǎn 半開.」 他們一 kwài 兒上了車, 在車上說話說的很gāusyìng. 他們四位裡頭有一位看了看表, 想 hái 有二十多分鐘. 所以他就下車走到車 jàn 外頭, 買了一 dyǎn 兒 dyǎn心. 回來的時候,看見火車在開je ne. 他要跑上去,可是車門 yǐjīng 關上了. 他很生chì 車 jàn 上的人說:「那不要jǐn. 你們四位,有三位 yǐjīng 走了, 就你一個人沒走. 你可以明天走.」 那位老先生說:「你不知道. 他們都是來sùng 我的. 就是我一個人要走ai」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 101-105)

所　坐　位

朋　友

B. Radicals

1. 户 (door, 63) as in: 所
2. 土 (earth, 32) as in: 坐
3. 亻 (man, 9) as in: 位
4. 月 (moon, 74) as in: 朋
5. 又 (also, 29) as in: 友

LESSON 36

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	那個字你看見了麼?	Did you see that character?
	B:	我看見了.	I saw it.
	A:	那個小字，你看見沒看見?	Did you see that small character?
	B:	我沒看見.	I didn't see it.
	A:	我說的話你tīng見了麼?	Did you hear what I said?
	B:	我tīng見了.	I heard it.
	A:	他說的話你tīng見沒tīng見?	Did you hear what he said?
	B:	我沒tīng見他說的話.	I didn't hear what he said.
	A:	那kè書你看懂了麼?	Did you read and understand that lesson?
	B:	那kè書我看懂了.	I read and understood that lesson.
	A:	Dì三十七kè, 你看懂沒看懂?	Did you read and understand Les. 37?

B:	我看了半天，沒看懂.	I read it for a long time, but didn't understand it.
A:	他說的話你tīng懂了麼？	Did you hear and understand what he said?
B:	Dì 一 tsz̀ 我沒tīng懂.	I didn't understand it at first.
A:	Dì 二tsz̀ 你tīng懂沒tīng懂？	Did you understand it the second time?
B:	Dì 二 tsz̀ 我tīng懂了.	I understood it the second time.
A:	你們兩個人的事，說wán了麼？	Did you finish talking about the business between the two of you?
B:	昨天說了一天，沒說wán.	We talked all day yesterday, but we didn't finish.
A:	今天早上又說了麼？	Did you talk again this morning?
B:	今天早上說了兩個鐘頭，說wán了.	We talked for two hours this morning and we have finished.

2. A:	你要買的東西都買wán了麼?	Did you finish buying the things you wanted to buy?
B:	沒買wán ne.	I didn't finish.
A:	Yīng國 yān, 你沒買jáu ba?	I don't suppose you succeeded in buying English tobacco, did you?
B:	沒買jáu. 他們都賣wán了.	No, I didn't. All the shops were out of that tobacco.
A:	Hēi chènshān, 你買jáu了麼?	Did you succeed in buying a black shirt?
B:	沒買jáu. 他們都賣bái chènshān.	No, I didn't. All shops carry white shirts.
A:	Bái lǐngdài, 你沒買jáu麼?	Didn't you succeed in buying a white tie?
B:	我買jáu了.	Yes, I did.

L. 36

3. A:	晚飯 你 做好了 麼 ?	Did you finish cooking supper?
B:	Yǐjīng 做好了 . Syàn 在 就 可以 吃 .	Yes, I have already finished. It can be served now.
A:	昨天 你 父親 回來了麼 ?	Did your father return yesterday?
B:	他 沒 回來 , 因為 chì 車 hwài 了 .	He didn't return, because the car broke down.
A:	Jù 在 你們 jyā 的 Lǐ 小 jye, 昨天 回去了 麼 ?	Did Miss Lǐ who had been staying at your home return yesterday?
B:	回去了 .	Yes, she did.
4. A:	那件事 , 你 沒做好 麼 ?	Didn't you accomplish that matter?
B:	我 做好了 . 今天 早上 我 yǐjing 做好了 .	I did. I accomplished it this morning.
A:	那本書 你 沒看 wán ba.	You didn't finish reading that book, I suppose.

214

	B: 我 前天 yǐjing 看wán了.	I finished reading it day before yesterday.
	A: 那 fēng syìn 你 沒寫wán ba.	You did not finish writing that letter, I suppose.
	B: 沒寫wán. 寫了一半.	No, I didn't. I wrote half of it.
5.	A: 你們 昨天 bān jyā，一天 沒bānwán ba?	You didn't finish moving in one day yesterday, did you?
	B: 東西太多，沒bānwán.	There were too many things, so we didn't finish.
6.	A: 你的表，你沒jǎujau ma?	Didn't you succeed in finding your watch?
	B: 我 jǎu了 半天，沒 jǎujau.	I looked around for a long time and didn't find it.
	A: 你母親 tì 你 jǎu了麼?	Did your mother look for it for you?
	B: 他 tì 我 jǎujau了.	Yes, she found it for me.

II. Basic Dialogue

1. **Bái**:	Jāng 先生 nín 早. Syèsye nín kěn 教我 中文.	Good Morning, Mr. Jāng. Thank you for your willingness to teach me Chinese.
Jāng:	不 kèchi. 你念的那 kè 書都 yùbei好了麼?	You are very polite. Have you prepared the lesson you are studying?
Bái:	沒 yùbei好 ne. 有 jǐjyù 話沒看懂.	No, I haven't prepared it well yet. There are a few sentences I didn't understand.
Jāng:	那 jǐjyù 話沒看懂?	Which few sentences didn't you understand?
Bái:	"他沒吃bǎu" 是甚麼意思?	What is the meaning of "Tā méichr̄bǎu"?
Jāng:	他吃了一 tyáu yú, 吃的不够.	He has eaten one fish which isn't enough.
Bái:	要是他吃了三 tyáu yú, 就够了麼?	Would he have eaten enough if he had had three fish?

	Jāng: 我想他就 吃bǎu了.	I think he would have had enough.
	Bái: Syàn在我 懂了.	Now I understand.
	Jāng: 明天我們 念 dì 三十七 kè, 你先 yùbeiyùbei.	Tomorrow we will study Lesson 37, be prepared for it.
2.	**Bái:** 為甚麼書上說那jāng hwà兒 hái 沒hwàwán ne?	Why does it say here in the book that this picture is not finished yet?
	Jāng: 那個 shān, 你看見了麼? Hái 沒hwàwán ne.	Did you see that hill? It is not finished yet.
	Bái: 那 tyáu hé hwà好了麼 ?	Is that river finished?
	Jāng: Hwà好了 .	Yes, it is.
3.	A: 那兩個 bīng 是 bùbīng 麼?	Are those two soldiers infantrymen?
	B: 不是, 是 chíbīng.	No, they are cavalrymen.
	A: 他們做甚麼 ne?	What are they doing?
	B: 他們 bǎ yíngjǎng的 syìn dyōu了. Tāmen jǎu syìn ne.	They have lost a letter for the battalion commander. They

	are looking for it.
A: Jǎujau了麼 ?	Have they found it?
B: 沒 jǎujau ne.	No, they haven't.
A: Dzěn麼 bàn ne?	What will they do?
B: 沒有 fá子. 他們得 gàusung Yíngjǎng.	There is nothing they can do. They will have to report it to the Battalion Commander.
A: Yíngjǎng 要生chì ba.	The Battalion Commander will get angry, I suppose.
B: 我 kǔngpà 他要生 chì.	I am afraid that he will.
A: 他們 pà 他們的 Yíngjǎng 麼 ?	Are they afraid of their Battalion Commander?
B: 他們 pà 他, 可是沒 fá子 .	Yes, they are, but there is no way out.
4. A: Jwāngjyǎ Chíbīng pà bùchyāng 麼?	Is the Armored Cavalry afraid of rifles?

B:	Jwāngjyǎ Chíbīng 不 pà bùchyāng, dzwèi pà 火 jyànpàu.	No, they are most afraid of bazookas.
A:	要是 你 **dāng** bīng, 你 syǐhwan dāng jwāngjyǎ chíbīng 麼 ?	If you were a soldier, would you like to be an armored cavalryman?
B:	我 不 syǐhwan dāng chíbīng, 也 不 syǐhwan dāng jwāngjyǎ chíbīng, 就 syǐhwan dāng bùbīng. 因為 bùbīng 是 Lùjyūn dzwèi 要jǐn的 bīng.	I neither like to be a cavalryman nor an armored cavalryman, but an infantryman because an infantryman is the most important soldier of the Army.

L. 36

Vocabulary

108.	bǎu	飽	SV:	be satisfied (after eating)
109.	bùbīng	步兵	N:	infantryman
110.	chíbīng	騎兵	N:	cavalryman
110.1	chí	騎	V:	ride on horseback, bicycle, etc., astraddle
110.2	jwāngjyǎ chíbīng	裝甲騎兵	N:	armored cavalryman
111.	dyōu	丟	V:	lose, misplace
112.	è	餓	SV:	be hungry
113.	fǎdz	法子	N:	way, method
113.1	méi fǎdz	沒法子	IE:	there's no way out! it can't be helped.
114.	hé	河	N:	river
115.	kě	渴	SV:	be thirsty
116.	kěn	肯	AV:	be willing to
117.	kǔngpà	恐怕	MA:	be afraid that: used in the sense of "perhaps"
117.1	pà	怕	V:	be afraid of, fear that
118.	shān	山	N:	mountain
119.	tyáu	條	M:	(measure for rivers, roads, fish, etc.)
120.	yùbei	預備	V:	prepare

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Resultative compound verbs (RV), actual type:

Resultative verbs are compounds of two members in which the first or root verb indicates the kind of action involved, while the second or the resultative verb ending shows the result or extent of the action expressed by the first. There are two types of resultative compounds - actual and potential. The actual type indicates that the result or goal has been actually attained.

Affirmative: kànjyanle Negative: méikànjyan

A few of the common resultative verb endings are given as follows:

Resultative Verb Endings	Meaning	Verbs Taking These Endings
-jyàn	perception of what is seen, heard, or smelled	tīng, kàn
-dǔng	understanding of what is seen, heard, or read	tīng, kàn, nyàn
-dàu	arrival at the goal of the action	dzwò, sùng, bàn, dzǒu, chǐng, syǎng
-jáu	success in attaining object of the action	mǎi, jǎu, jyàn, wèn, yùng, shwèi
-hǎu	satisfactory completion of the action	bàn, dzwò, syě, sywé, yùbei
-wán	completion of the action	shwō, tán, syě, sywé, nyàn, jyāu, chr̄, hē, dzwò, bàn, mǎi, yùng, bān, chàng
-lái	arrival here	shàng, syà, jìn, chū, chǐ, gwò, hwéi

L. 36

-chyù	arrival there	shàng, syà, jìn, chū, gwò, hwéi
-shànglai	arrival up here	bān, ná, dzǒu, pǎu
-shàngchyu	arrival up there	bān, ná, dzǒu, pǎu
-syàlai	arrival down here	ná, bān, dzǒu, pǎu
-syàchyu	arrival down there	hē, chr̄, ná, bān, dzǒu, dzwò, fàng, pǎu
-jìnlai	arrival in here	bān, ná, dzǒu, pǎu, fàng
-jìnchyu	arrival in there	bān, ná , dzǒu pǎu, fàng
-chūlai	arrival out here	syǎng, nyàn, bān, dzǒu, pǎu, ná
-chūchyu	arrival out there	dzǒu, pǎu, ná, bān
-chilai	success in raising up	ná, bān, jàn, dzwò, syǎng
-shàng	success in putting on	gwān, fàng, syě
-kāi	success in opening	kāi
-bǎu	completion in eating	chr̄
-chīngchu	clear (in meaning)	shwō, tīng

Tā jìnlaile ma?	Has he come in?
Wŏ méikànjyan.	I didn't see.
Tā shwōde hwà nĭ tĭngdŭngle ma?	Did you understand what he said?
Wŏ tĭngdŭngle.	I understood.
Nĭ chr̄wán fàn le méiyou?	Have you finished eating?
Wŏ chr̄wánle, yĕ chr̄băule.	I have finished and I have had enough.
Nĭ fùchin hwéilaile ma?	Has your father returned?
Tā hwéilaile, yòu chūchyule.	He has returned but he has gone out again.
Nĭde bĭ, nĭ jăujaule ma?	Have you located your pen?
Wŏ méijăujáu. Wŏ măijaule yíge wŏ syăng măide bĭ.	I haven't located my pen. I succeeded in buying a pen which I wished to purchase.
Jwōdz nĭ bānchulaile ma?	Have you moved the table out here.
Wŏ bānchulaile, kĕshr tā yòu bānjìnchyule.	I moved it out, but he moved it back in again.

Translate the following:

1) We will move the table in after we have finished talking.

2) We will eat after we have moved the table in.

3) We will go out after we have had enough to eat.

4) We will come back after we have finished our business.

5) If you have not found your watch, go out and buy one.

6) You can move the chairs down here; I will move them out there.

L. 36

7) Please close the door and open the windows.

8) He has finished eating the food, but he has not had enough.

9) This lesson is easy and I have prepared it well.

IV. Pattern Drill

Resultative Compound Verbs (RV), Actual Type

Pattern 1

Resultative verbs with the more common endings of -chīngchu, -wán, -dǔng, -dàu, -jǎu, -hǎu, -shàng, etc.

Dì一 tsz̀你說的太 kwài, 我沒 tīngchīngchu. Dì 二tsz̀ 我 tīngchīngchu 了.	The first time you spoke too fast. I didn't hear clearly. The second time I heard you clearly.

Examples:

1) A. 那兩本中國書很 nán買. 你買 jau 了麼?	Those two Chinese books are very hard to get (buy). Have you succeeded in getting them?
B. Dì 一本買 jau 了. Dì 二本 沒買 jáu. 因為 賣 wán 了.	I succeeded in buying the first volume but not the second because it was sold out.
A. 你 bǎ dì 一本看 wán 了 沒有?	Have you finished reading the first volume?
B. Hái 沒看 wán ne. 明天就 可以看 wán 了.	Not yet. I'll be able to finish reading it tomorrow.
A. 我們把這本書念 wán 了 沒有?	Have we finished reading this book?
B. 我們 hái 沒 bǎ 這本書 念 wán ne. Syīwang 下月 能 bǎ 這本書念 wán 了.	We haven't finished reading this volume yet. We hope that we can finish reading it next month.
2) A. 你 bǎ 這 sye 中國字 寫好了麼?	Have you finished writing these Chinese characters?
B. 我 bǎ 這 sye 中國字寫好了, 可是我 kǔngpà hái 沒 學會 ne.	I have finished writing these Chinese characters, but I am afraid I haven't learned them well enough yet.

L. 36

A. 你 bǎ 這 sye 字學會了以後.你 kěn tì 我寫一 fēng syìn 麼?

After you have mastered these characters, are you willing to write a letter for me?

B. 這 sye 字我學會了以後一定 tì 你寫一 fēng syìn.

After I have mastered these characters, I will definitely write a letter for you.

Exercise:

a. Using the following table, make choice type questions orally and answer them:

Object	Subject	RV
Nèijāng Jūngwén bàu	nǐ	kàndǔng
Ex: Q: Nèijāng Jūngwén bàu nǐ kàndǔngle méikàndǔng?		
A: Nèijāng Jūngwén bàu wǒ kàndǔngle (or méikàndǔng)		
1. Nèijyàn yàujǐnde shr̀	nǐ	bàndau
2. Nèiwei hǎukànde syáujye	nǐ	chǐngdau
3. Tā dyōulede yàushr	tā	jǎujáu
4. Jyūntwánjǎng	nèige bùbīng	jyànjáu
5. Nèisye hǎu jyǒu	nǐ	hējáu
6. Nèityáu yú	nǐ	chr̄jáu
7. Dzwò chwán láide nèige rén	nǐ	jyējáu
8. Nèisye shr̀	nǐ dìdi	bànhǎu

b. Using the bǎ construction, make choice type questions orally and answer them:

Subject	Object	RV
Nǐ jyějye	nèisye tsài	dzwòhǎu
Ex: Q: Nǐ jyějye bǎ nèisye tsài dzwòhaŭle méiyou? (or dzwòhǎule méidzwòhǎu)		
A: Wǒ jyějye bǎ nèisye tsài dzwòhǎule. (or méidzwòhǎu)		

Subject	Object	RV
1. Sywésheng	'jīntyande dż	syěhău
2. Nèige bīng	fàng hwŏjyàntŭng	sywéhău
3. Sywésheng	míngtyande shū	yùbeihău
4. Syānsheng	shàngyikè	jyāuwán
5. Jèisye jwāng-jyǎchíbīng	nèisye dždàn	yùngwán
6. Nǐ	nèiwǎn tāng	hēwán
7. Nèige sywésheng	jèige wūdzde chwānghu	gwānshang
8. Nǐ	yàu gàusung tāde hwà	shwōchīngchu

Pattern 2

Resultative verbs with the more common endings of -lái, -chyù, -hwéilai, -hwéichyu, -shànglai, -shàngchyu, -syàlai, -syàchyu, -jìnlai, -jìnchyu, -chūlai, -chūchyu, etc.

你父親 回來了, 可是他 wàng了 bǎ màu子 dài 回來了.	Your father is back, but he forgot to bring back his hat.

Examples:

1) Lóu 上有 táng. Hái子都從 lóu 下 上去了.	There is candy upstairs. The children have all gone up (there) from downstairs.
2) 母親在 lóu 上看見 hái子 上來了, 就 gěi 他們 táng.	When the mother saw the children coming upstairs, she (then) gave them candy.
3) 小弟弟 dżjǐ 不能上 lóu, 所以沒上去.	The small brother couldn't go upstairs by himself, so he didn't go up.
4) 母親叫大 hái子 bǎ táng ná 下去 gěi 小弟弟. 大 hái子 lìkè bǎ táng ná 下去了.	The mother asked the bigger child to take some candy downstairs for the little brother. The bigger child took the candy down im-

	mediately.
5) 為甚麼小弟弟 kū 了?那 sye táng 大 hái 子 ná 下去了沒 ná 下去?	Why did little brother cry? Did the bigger boy take the candy downstairs?
6) 後來母親問大 hái 子 "你 bǎ 那 sye táng ná 到那兒去了"?	Later on the mother asked the bigger child, "where did you take the candy?"
7) 大 hái 子說我 bǎ 那 sye táng ná 到 jyē 上去 sùng 朋友了.	The elder child said, "I took the candy to the street and gave it to friends."

Exercise:

a. Answer the following questions orally:

1) Nèige shān nǐ dzwótyan shàngchyule méiyou?

2) Jèige wūdz jīntyan Měigwode chíbīng jìnlaile méiyou?

3) Nèige wūdz něiwei syānsheng jìnchyule?

4) Nèige wūdzde sywésheng gāngtsái chūlaile méichūlai?

5) Nǐmen gāngtsái chūchyule méiyou?

6) Nèige lóude rén yàushr syàndzài gwòlaile, tāmen hái hwéichyu ma?

7) Nèige lóu nǐmen yàushr gwòchyule, nǐmen děi hwéilai ma?

8) Nèityáu hé yàushr nǐ syàchyule, nǐ pà búpà?

9) Yàushr nǐ tsúng nèityáu hé shànglaile yǐhou jyòu bìngle, nǐ kěn dzài syàchyu ma?

10) Shéide tàitai bānlaile? Shéide tàitai máibānlai?

b. Answer the following questions orally:

1) Nèige shān nǐ dzǒushangchyule yǐhòu, nǐ yǒu fádz dzǒusyalai ma?

2) Nǐmen méibǎ jyālide dūngsyi bānjinlái yǐchyán, děi syān wèn shéi?

3) Jèimen gāushèpàu wǒmen bǎ pàudàn fàngjinchyule yǐhòu, jyòu kéyi lìkè dǎ tāmen le ma?

4) Yàushr nǐ èle, nǐ bǎ sz̀wǎn fàn chr̄syachyule yǐhòu, nǐ jyòu bǎule ba?

5) Nǐ bǎ sz̀wǔwǎn jyǒu hēsyachyule yǐhòu, nǐ hái kě ma?

6) Nǐ bǎ wànglede dz̀ syǎngchilaile yǐhòu, nǐ lìkè jyòu syě ma?

7) Nǐmende syānsheng dzwótyan méibǎ tāmende màudz náshang lóu lai ma?

8) Nǐmende syānsheng dzwótyan méibǎ tāmende háidz dàidau jèige wūdz lai ma?

Homework

Render the following sentences into Chinese orally:

1) I am most thirsty after running up the mountain.

2) I feel very hungry before meal time every day.

3) I am afraid that if I write to her, my wife will be angry.

4) Boys are afraid of losing their girl friends.

5) How many routes are there from the United States to China?

6) There isn't any method to prevent wars.

7) I helped them look for the infantry troops, but I didn't find any.

8) There are a lot of armored cavalry but only a few cavalry troops.

V. Reading

A. Characters (Nos. 167 - 173)

167.	筆 笔	bǐ	N:	pen, pencil, any writing instrument	中國筆	- Chinese brush
					syīn 筆	- new pen
168.	紙	jř	N:	paper	一張紙	- one sheet of paper
169.	張 (張)	jāng	N:	(Surname)	張先生	- Mr. Jāng
			M:	(for paper, pictures, tables, etc.)	九張紙	- nine sheets of paper
170.	山	shān	N:	mountain	山上	- on the mountain
					上山	- go up a mountain
					山 pàu	- mountain piece (artillery)
171.	河	hé	N:	river	大河	- big river
					河裡頭	- in the river
					一tyáu 河	- one river
172.	畫 画	hwà	V:	draw, paint	畫兒	- picture, painting
			N:	picture (drawing or painting)	畫畫兒	- draw or paint a picture

173 法 fá BF: way, method 法子 - method, way
fà BF: France, French 法國 - France
[fǎ] [BF: law] 法文書 - French book

B: Sentences

1. 這張畫兒賣多少錢?
2. 五分錢. 因為紙不好,畫的也不好.
3. 那個山畫的太大. 這 tyáu 河畫的
太小.
4. 這是一張法國畫兒. 你知道麼?
5. 法國畫兒不一定都好.
6. 你不懂. 我沒法子.
7. 女人開車開不 kwài.
8. 路太遠,走路去不方byan.
9. 要是山太 gāu, 我跑不上去.
10. 你想河裡的水可以 hē 麼?
11. 請你們別 bǎ 紙放在地下.
12. 張先生很老了. 不必走下來.

13. 用日本筆寫字,寫的好看麼?

14. 地方不够大,東西放不進去.

15. 那位姓王的,教書的法子 jēn 好.

16. 昨天事情很多,誰都沒工夫 hē 茶.

17. 能說話的人,不一定能作事.

18. 你得知道他的名字叫甚麼.

19. 那個筆 pù 很近. 他們賣筆也賣書.

20. 中文書,美國人看得懂看不懂?

21. 我們學校在城外頭,有兩千學生.

22. 哥哥的女朋友一定會唱法國國歌.

23. 小弟弟問母親今年不念中文行不行.

24. 因為門後頭有一張大 jwō 子,所以門開不開.

25. 男人的手表不貴就賣三 kwài 二毛七分.

26. 從前坐 chwán 到外國去一個月回不來.

27. 我不明bai他為甚麼用一萬 kwài錢
買那件大衣.

28. 火車的門又關上了.出得來可是進
不去.

29. 八dyǎn吃早飯,兩dyǎn鐘吃 dyǎn心,五dyǎn
半吃晚飯.

30. 父親用了九個月的時候,寫了六百
四十七個 gù事,都很有意思.

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 106-110)

又 想 請

吃 飯

B. Radicals

1. 又 (also, 29) as the word: 又
2. 心 (heart, 61) as in: 想
3. 言 (words, 149) as in: 請
4. 口 (mouth, 30) as in: 吃
5. 飠 (food, 184) as in: 飯

LESSON 37

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	Gěi 你 一wǎn 飯, 你 吃得bǎu 麼 ?	Will you be satisfied, if I give you one bowl of rice?
	B:	我 想 我 吃不bǎu.	I don't think it will be enough.
	A:	兩 wǎn 飯, 你 吃得 bǎu 吃不 bǎu?	Will you have enough with two bowls of rice?
	B:	兩 wǎn 飯 也 吃 不 bǎu. 三 wǎn chà 不 多 就 吃得bǎu 了 .	Two bowls won't be enough either. Three bowls will be about enough.
2.	A:	這 張 jwō 子 你 一個人 bān得 出 去 麼 ?	Can you move this table out alone?
	B:	我 一個 人 bān 不 出去.	I can't do it alone.
	A:	你們 兩個 人 bān得出去 bān不出去 ?	Can the two of you move it out?
	B:	兩個 人 bān得出去 .	The two of us can do it.
3.	A:	半個 鐘頭, 這 三十個 字 你 寫得wán 寫不wán?	Can you finish writing these thirty characters in half an hour?

L. 37	B:	半個鐘頭我寫不 wán. 字太多.	I can't do it in half an hour. There are too many characters.
	A:	三個鐘頭你寫得 wán 麼.	Can you finish writing them in three hours?
	B:	我想寫得wán.	I think I can.
4.	A:	這 sye 東西，你們吃得了* 吃不了?	Can you finish eating these things?
	B:	我想我們吃不了. 東西太多, 人不多.	I don't think that we can finish. There are too many things, and not many people.
	A:	Dzài 有十個人, hái 吃不了麼?	If there are ten more people, will you still be unable to finish it?
	B:	Hái 是吃不了. 我想够吃兩天的.	We still won't be able to finish it. There is enough for two days.

* 了 here pronounced as lyǎu, in RV like chr̄delyǎu.

5.	A:	這個 門,你 開不開麼?	Can't you open this door?
	B:	我 沒有 yàushr, 開不開.	I don't have a key: I can't.
	A:	那個 chwānghu, 你 關得上 麼?	Can you close that window?
	B:	我 想 我關不上.	I don't think I can.
6.	A:	這個 jī 關chyāng, 你 ná 得chí來 ná 不chí來?	Can you pick up this machine gun with your hands or not?
	B:	我 一個 人 ná 不chi來.	I can't do it alone.
7.	A:	這shwāng syé, 你chwān得下去 chwān 不下去?	Can you wear this pair of shoes or not?
	B:	太小, 我 想 chwān不下去.	They are too small, I don't think I can.
	A:	那個 màu子, 你dài得上 麼?	Can you wear that hat?

L. 37

	B:	我 dài得上. 不大也不小.	I can. It is neither too big, nor too small.
8.	A:	那件事你想不起來了 ba.	You cannot recall this matter, I suppose.
	B:	Děng 我想想, 我想可以想得起來.	Let me think. I believe I can recall it.
9.	A:	你想我的中國話可以學得好麼?	Do you think I can learn Chinese well?
	B:	Nín 太 kèchi, nín 一定可以學得好.	You are too modest. You certainly can learn it well.
10.	A:	中國衣 shang, 在 jyē上買不 jáu ba.	Chinese clothes can not be bought in town, I suppose.
	B:	買得 jáu. 我知道有一個 pù子賣中國衣 shang.	Yes, they can. I know there is a store where Chinese clothes are sold.

11.	A:	你 ná 得了 ná 不了這 sye yǐ子?	Can you carry these chairs or not?
	B:	我就 ná 得了兩個 yǐ子.	I can carry only two chairs.
12.	A:	你一個鐘頭回得去麼?	Will you be able to go back in an hour?
	B:	一個鐘頭回不去.	I can't go back in an hour.
	A:	從這 tyáu 路, 你回得去麼?	Can you go back by this route?
	B:	這 tyáu 路回得去. 那 tyáu 路也回得去.	I can go back either through this route or that route.
13.	A:	他 tīng 得懂 tīng 不懂你說的話?	Can he understand your language or not?
	B:	他 tīng 得懂一 dyǎn兒. 不都懂.	He understands a little, not entirely.
14.	A:	那件事你們明天 bàn 不 wán ba.	You cannot finish that matter tomorrow, I suppose.

	B:	明天 不行. Dzài有 兩天 就 chà不多了.	We can't finish it tomorrow. Two more days would be about enough.
15.	A:	你 用 這個 筆 寫得了 中國字麼?	Can you write Chinese characters with this pen?
	B:	我 寫不了. 我 用 中國 筆 寫得了.	No, I can't. I can write with a Chinese writing brush.
16.	A:	你 在 這個 wū子 裡頭 shwèi得jáu ma?	Are you able to sleep in this room?
	B:	我 shwèi得jáu. 那兒 都 shwèi得jáu.	Yes, I can. I can sleep anywhere.
17.	A:	你 寫不wán 那fēng syìn ba.	You can't finish writing that letter, I suppose.
	B:	我 想 我 寫得wán. 没有 甚麼 要jǐn的 事.	I think I can finish it. There isn't anything important.
18.	A:	你 看不wán 那本 書 ba.	You can't finish reading that book, I suppose.

B: 我 看得wán 那本 書.	Yes, I can.

II. Basic Dialogue

1. Bái:	張先生, nín 可以不可以 gěi 我們說說 nín 這兩-張 hwà 兒?	Can you explain these two pictures for us or not, Mr. Jāng?
張:	可以. 先說這張 ba.	Yes, I can. Let us talk about this one first.
Bái:	那 sye bīng 都是那國的?	Which country's soldiers are these?
張:	都是美國的. 他們都是工 bīng.	They are American soldiers. They are all engineers.
Bái:	Nín dzěn麼知道他們是工 bīng ne?	How do you know that they are engineers?
張:	他們 dā jōuchyáu ne.	They are building a ponton bridge.
Bái:	甚麼是 jōuchyáu?	What is a ponton bridge?
張:	Jōuchyáu 是用 fújōu dā 的 chyáu. 也叫 fúchyáu.	A ponton bridge is built with pontons. It is also known as "fúchyáu".

Bái:	Pàubīng 不 dā fúchyáu 麼?	Don't artillery troops build ponton bridges?
張:	Dā fúchyáu 是 工bīng的 事, 不是 pàubīng的 事.	It is the engineers' not the artillery troops' duty to build ponton bridges.
Bái:	Pàubīng 都 作 甚麼 事?	What do the artillery men perform?
張:	Pàubīng 得 會 用 山 pàu, gēn yějànpàu.	The artillery men should know how to use mountain guns and field guns.
Bái:	那張 hwà兒 是 甚麼 意思?	What is the meaning of that picture?
張:	一個 jyā裡頭, 有兩個 hái 子. 一個 很 dzāng, 一個 很 gānjing.	There are two children in a family. One of them is very dirty and the other very clean.
Bái:	Dwèi 了. 那個 男hái子的 lyǎn 很 dzāng, 那個 女 hái子的 lyǎn 很 gānjing.	Right. That boy's face is very dirty, but that girl's face is very clean.

張:	所以 他們的 母親 syǐhwan 那個 女hái-子。不 syǐhwan 那 個 男hái 子.	Therefore their mother likes the girl but not the boy.
Bái:	是不是 那個 母親 要 那個 男 hái 子 syǐlyǎn ne?	Is it that the mother wants the boy to wash his face?
張:	Dwèi 了. 先 要 他 bǎ 衣shang twō了.	Right. She wants him first to take off his clothes.
Bái:	是的. 那個 男hái 子 bǎ 他的 衣 shang 放在 lóutī 上頭了.	Yes. That boy placed his clothes on the stairs.
張:	他 母親 也 要 他 bǎ màu 子 jāi 下 來.	The mother also wants him to take his hat off.
Bái:	是 不是 他 bǎ màu 子 rēng 在 yǐ子 上 了?	Is it that he has thrown his hat on the chair?
張:	是的. 那個 hái子 很 chígwài. 他 很 不 syǐhwan syǐlyǎn.	Yes. That boy is very strange. He does not like to wash his face.

Bái:	他的 lyǎn syǐ的gānjing syǐ不gānjing?	Can his face be washed clean or not?
張:	我想 syǐ 的 gānjing.	I think it can.
Bái:	我看他母親要 bāng 他 syǐ.	I think his mother is going to help him wash.
張:	那個 hái子已jing 十swèi了, hái syǐ不 gānjing 他 dzjǐ的 lyǎn, jēn dyōulyǎn.	It is a shame. That boy is already ten years old and still can't wash his own face clean.
Bái:	是不是他很 bèn?	Is it that he is stupid?
張:	很 bèn. 他父親叫他上學, 他不去.	Very stupid. His father tells him to go to school, but he won't go.
Bái:	為甚麼?	Why not?
張:	他說:「我知道我很 bèn. 我學不了甚麼.」	He said: "I know that I am very stupid. I can't learn anything."

L. 37

Bái:	他會寫字麼?	Can he write characters?
張:	會. 可是寫的很 màn. 一天寫不了十個字.	Yes, he can, but very slowly. He can't finish ten characters in a day.
Bái:	他 syǐhwan 吃táng麼?	Does he like to eat candy?
張:	很 syǐhwan. 你 gěi 他多少. 他都吃得了.	Very much. No matter how much you give him, he can finish all of it.

Vocabulary

121.	bèn	笨	SV:	be stupid, clumsy
122.	chígwài	奇怪	SV:	be strange
123.	-chǐ	起	RVE:	up, afford
124.	dā	搭	V:	build (of temporary structure only)
125.	dzāng	髒	SV:	be dirty
126.	fújōu	浮舟	N:	ponton
126.1	jōuchyáu or fúchyáu	舟橋 浮橋	N:	ponton bridge
126.2	chyáu	橋	N:	bridge
127.	gānjìng	乾淨	SV:	be clean
128.	gūngbīng	工兵	N:	engineer (branch of service)
129.	jāi	摘	V:	take off (hat,picture,flower, etc.)
130.	lóutī	樓梯	N:	stairs
131.	lyǎn	臉	N:	face
131.1	dyōulyǎn	丟臉	IE:	lose face, lose prestige
132.	-lyǎu	了	RVE:	indicates capacity for doing something, or for carrying it through to completion
133.	lyóudànpàu	榴彈炮	N:	howitzer

134.	pàubīng	炮兵	N:	artillery (branch of service)
135.	rēng	扔	V:	throw (away)
136.	syǐ	洗	V:	wash
136.1	syǐlyǎn	洗臉	VO:	wash face
137.	twō	脫	V:	take off (clothes)

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Resultative compound verbs, potential type

In Lesson 36 the common resultative verb endings, and verbs taking these endings, were given. A resultative verb of the actual type is made of one of these verbs plus an appropriate ending.

The potential type resultative verb is formed by inserting between the verb and its ending, -de- for the positive and -bu- for the negative. The potential type resultative verb means that the result or extent of the action is conceived of as being possible or impossible of attainment.

(Positive)	(Negative)	(Other verbs taking these endings)
tīngdejyàn	tīngbujyàn	kàn
kàndedǔng	kànbudǔng	tīng, nyàn
sùngdedàu	sùngbudàu	dzwò, bàn, dzǒu, chǐng, syǎng
mǎidejáu	mǎibujáu	jǎu, jyàn, yùng, shwèi
bàndehǎu	bànbuhǎu	dzwò, syě, sywé, yùbei, dā
shwōdewán	shwōbuwán	tán, syě, sywé, nyàn, jyāu, chr̄, hwà, chōu, syǐ, hē, dzwò, bàn, dā, yùng, bān, chàng, ná,
shàngdelái	shàngbulái	syà, jìn, chū, chǐ, gwò, hwéi
syàdechyù	syàbuchyù	shàng, jìn, chū, gwò, hwéi
bāndeshànglái	bānbushànglái	ná, dzǒu, pǎu, rēng
nádeshàngchyù	nábushàngchyù	bān, dzǒu, pǎu, rēng
dzǒudesyàlái	dzǒubusyàlái	ná, bān, pǎu, rēng

(Positive)	(Negative)	(Other verbs taking these endings)
hēdesyàchyù	hēbusyàchyù	chr̄, ná, bān, dzŏu, dwò, fàng, pău, rēng
fàngdejìnlái	fàngbujìnlái	bān, ná, dzŏu, pău, rēng
păudejìnchyù	păubujìnchyù	ná, bān, dzŏu, fàng, rēng
syăngdechūlái	syăngbuchūlái	nyàn, bān, dzŏu, pău, rēng
dzŏudechūchyù	dzŏubuchūchyù	pău, ná, bān, rēng
jàndechĭlái	jànbuchĭlái	ná, bān, dzwò, syăng
gwāndeshàng	gwānbushàng	fàng, syĕ, chwān, dài
kāidekāi	kāibukāi	
chr̄debău	chr̄bubău	
syĭdegānjing	syĭbugānjing	

Wŏ tīngdejyàn tā shwōhwà, kĕshr wŏ tīngbudŭng.	I can hear him talking, but I can't understand what he says.
Wŏmen yàu shwōde hwà hĕn dwō, yìtyān yĕ shwōbuwán.	We have a lot to talk about. We can't even finish it in a whole day.
Nèige chwānghu kāidekāi, yĕ gwāndeshàng.	That window can be opened and also can be closed.
Wŏ syàdechyù, kĕshr shàngbulái.	I can get down there, but can't get up.
Tā syìng shémma wŏ syăngdechĭlái, tā jyàu shémma syăngbuchĭlái.	I can recall his last name but not his first name.

Translate the following:

1) When do you think you can finish reading this book?

2) I think he can manage that matter well.

3) That table is very big. We can move it down but not up.

4) I can't open this door, can you?

5) Can a Chinese writing brush be bought in town, may I ask?

6) This song is not long. It can be sung in ten minutes.

7) I don't know where my watch is. It can't be found.

2. A resultative compound verb does not necessarily have both actual and potential types. Some have only the potential type, like kàndechǐ, kànbuchǐ, but not kànchǐle, méikànchǐ. Note that the object follows a resultative verb, or stands in the transposed position.

(Positive)		(Negative)		(Other verbs taking these endings)
kàndechǐ	respect	kànbuchǐ	despise	
mǎidechǐ	can afford to buy	mǎibuchǐ	can't afford to buy	chr̄, chwān, dài, jù
dzwòdelyǎu	can accomplish	dzwòbulyǎu	can't accomplish	bàn, bān, pǎu, chr̄, hē, ná

Tā kànbuchǐ méiyou chyán de rén.	He looks down on poor people.
Syīn chìchē nǐ mǎidechǐ ma?	Can you afford to buy a new car?
Tài gwèide màudz wǒ dàibuchǐ.	I can't afford to wear too expensive hats.
Nèige jwōdz nǐ bāndelyǎu ma?	Can you move that table?
Nèige jwōdz wǒmen lyǎngge rén yě bānbulyǎu.	Not even the two of us can move that table.

Translate the following:

1) I despise him because he is not a good man.
2) Do your friends respect you?
3) He has a lot of money and can afford to buy a new car.
4) I cannot afford to live in a new house.
5) You gave me too much, I am unable to finish eating them.

Note that the object follows a resultative verb, or stands in the transposed position:

Nǐ chr̄delyǎu jèisye fàn ma?	Can you eat all this rice?
Jèisye fàn nǐ chr̄delyǎu ma?	(same)

Note also that not all compound verbs are resultative. For example, tīngshwō, jyèshau, rènshr, yùbei, míngbai, are not. The test for resultatives is whether the compound can be converted into the potential type or not.

IV. Pattern Drill

Resultative Compound Verbs, (RV), Potential Type

Pattern 1

Resultative verbs with the common endings of -jyàn, -dǔng, -dàu, -jáu, -wán, -lyǎu, -kāi, -chǐ, -hǎu, -bǎu, -kwài, -dwō, -chǐng-chu, -mǐngbai, -gānjìng, etc.

中國字先生寫的 kwài, 學生寫的不 kwài.	As for Chinese characters, the teacher is able to write them fast, (while) the pupils are unable to write them fast.

Examples:

1) A. Yè 裏那sye 山你看的見麼?	Are you able to see those hills at night?
B. 天不太 hēi 我看的見. 要是天太 hēi, 我看不見.	When the night is not too dark, I am able to see them. If it is too dark, then I wouldn't be able to see them.
2) A. 這本書的 jyù 子你都看的懂麼?	As for the sentences in this book, are you able to understand them (all)?
B. Rúngyi 的看的懂, 太 nán 的看不懂.	I am able to understand the easy ones, but I am unable to understand those that are too difficult.
3) A. 這feng syìn sùng 到Jyòu-jīn 山去, 今天 sùng 的到 sùng 不到?	As for sending this letter to San Francisco, will it arrive there or not today?

B. 這feng syìn 你坐fēijī去 sùng 的到，你坐chì車去sùng 不到.	If you go by plane, you would be able to deliver it today. If you take a car, then you wouldn't be able to deliver it today.
4) A. 你看那些 hái 子上 lóutī, 上的 kwài 不kwài?	Do you think those children are able to climb the stairs fast?
B. 上的不kwài. Hái 子太小, lóutī 都上不了.	They are unable to. The children are too small. They are unable even to climb the stairs.
5) A. 這sye 子dàn 你一個人 ná的了 ná不了?	As for these bullets, are you able to carry them all by yourself?
B. 這sye 子dàn 太 jùng. 我一個人ná 不了.	These bullets are too heavy. I wouldn't be able to take them all.

Exercise:

a. Fill in the following:

1) Tā hěn tsūngming, tā dìdi hěn bèn. Nèijyan shr̀ching tā bàn__dàu, tā dìdi bàn__dàu.

2) Pàubīng yùng lyóudànpàu dǎ yíge hěn ywǎnde shān, tāmen dǎ__jáu.

3) Yìtyān nyàn yíkè shū sywésheng yùbei__hǎu. Yàushr sānkè shū, yùbei__hǎu.

4) Jèige chyáu tài cháng, yíge jūngtóu dā__hǎu.

5) Jèige fúchyáu, èrshrge gūngbīng, dā__hǎu dā__hǎu?

6) Wǒ háidzde lyǎn tài dzāng, tā dz̀jǐ syǐlyán syǐ__-gānjing.

7) Jèijyan yīshang syǎujíle, bùrúngyi twō__kwài.

8) Nèige yān tài gwèi,méi chyánde rén chōu__chǐ.

9) Tā méibǎ mén kāikai, tā méiyou yàushr, kāi__kāi.

10) Jèisye dyǎnsyin búgòu, wǒmen yídìng chr̄__bǎu. Yàushr chr̄bǎule wǒmen jyòu bùchr̄fànle.

b. Render the following into Chinese, using the potential type RV:

1) There are some artillery men firing on the mountain top. Can you see them?

2) They are very talkative. They could talk all day and not finish talking.

3) Can the engineer troops get back before 4 p.m.?

4) I am hungry. Of course, I can finish this bowl of rice.

5) The children are singing outside. How can I sleep well?

6) You should not look down on the poor people.

7) I can't open this window. Please help me.

8) I've just been learning to write Chinese characters for a couple of days. I can't write them nicely.

9) He didn't finish reading the book. He told his teacher: "I can't understand the book that I am reading."

10) I have washed the clothes. But they are too small now, I can't wear them anymore.

Pattern 2

Resultative verbs with endings of -lái, -chyù, -hwéilai, -hwéichyu, -shànglai, -shàngchyu, -syàlai, -syàchyu, -jìnlai,-jìnchyu, -chūlai, -chūchyu, -gwòlai, -gwòchyu, -chǐlai.

Chī 車 hwài 了, 我們 回不去. 可是父親有事, 先坐 fēijī 回去了.	The car broke down, and we couldn't go back. But father has (some)business, so he went back by plane first.

Examples:

1) Kètīng 裏的人太多 我進不去. Chígwài 他 dzěn 麼進去了?	There were too many people in the parlor, I couldn't get inside. Strange, how come he got in?
2) 這個 lóutī 真不好走 我kǔngpà 上不去. 就是上去了也不一定下的來.	This stairway is really hard to walk on. I am afraid I wouldn't be able to walk up. Even if I did go up, I wouldn't be able to get down.
3) 我吃的太 bǎu. 這 sye tsài 我吃不下去.	I'm too full from eating. I wouldn't be able to swallow (eat) all these courses.
4) 那 sye hwàr 太 gāu. 你 jāi 不下來 不 dyōulyǎn.	Those pictures are too high. You wouldn't lose face if you couldn't take them down.
5) 我要 bǎ 這個 màu 子 rēng 上去. 你看 rēng的上去 rēng不上去?	I want to throw this hat up there. Do you think I'll be able to do it?
6) 這個 fúchyáu, jàn 車開的 gwo 去 開不 gwo 去?	Would the tanks be able to go across this ponton bridge?
7) Dzàijùng 車上 yǐjing 有很多 bùchyāng, 手 chyāng, 這 sye pàudàn kǔngpà 放不下去.	There are already a lot of pistols and rifles in the truck. I am afraid it wouldn't be able to hold these shells.
8) 我太太 jywé 的這個 kǎbīn chyāng 太 jùng, 他 ná 不 chi 來.	My wife feels that this carbine is too heavy. She is unable to pick it up.
9) 我先想不 chi 來他的名子. 後來我想 chi 來了.	At first I couldn't think of his name. Later on, I recalled it (what it was).

10) 我想chi他的名字來了, 可是沒法子jǎu 他.我們都想不出法子來jǎu他.	I recall his name, but I have no way of looking for him. None of us can find a way of looking for him.

Exercise:

Using the following expressions, make choice type questions and answer them orally:

be able to move that table up here

Ex: Q: Nèijang jwōdz nǐ bāndeshànglái bānbushànglái?

A: Nèijang jwōdz wǒ bāndeshànglái (or bānbushànglái).

1) be able to run down here

2) be able to write down what he said

3) be able to walk out this door

4) be able to take that broken chair out here

5) be able to deliver those things into this room

6) be able to get that picture down

7) be able to place this howitzer in

8) be able to think of a way to manage that business

9) be able to eat all these refreshments (lit. get these refreshments down).

10) be able to get back before noon

Homework

Render the following sentences into Chinese orally:

1) The children can't wash their hands clean.

2) Can a platoon engineer finish building a ponton bridge in an hour?

3) Many pontons are used in building a ponton bridge.

4) Do cavalry troops take off their hats when they see a battalion commander?

5) Our artillerymen know how to use howitzers, heavy machine guns, and anti-tank guns.

6) You won't lose face if you can't sing Chinese songs very well.

7) Can the armored cavalry pass over this small bridge?

8) Don't throw your helmet away. You wouldn't be able to buy one in the store.

V. Reading

A. Characters (Nos. 174 - 181)

174.	新	syīn	SV: be new	新的	- new
				很新	- very new
				新pù子	- new store
175.	舊	jyòu	SV: be old (in use)	舊東西	- old things
	旧			舊了	- become old (in use)
				舊jīn山	- San Francisco
176.	魚	yú	N: fish	賣魚的	- fish seller
				愛吃魚	- love to eat fish
177.	船	chwán	N: boat	坐船	- ride on a boat
				船上	- on the boat
				一tyáu船	- one boat
178.	真	jēn	A: really, truly	真好	- really good
	眞		[SV: real, genuine]	真不tswò	- really not bad
179.	快	kwài	SV: be quick,fast	很快	- very fast
			A: quickly, soon	快走	- go quickly
180.	慢	màn	SV: be slow	很慢	- very slow
			A: slowly	慢吃	- eat slowly
181.	極	jí	P : (Suffix to SV's indicating extreme degree)	快極了	- extremely fast
	(极)			好極了	- extremely well

B. Sentences

1. 你要買新chì車麼?
2. 買不chǐ, 太貴. 想買一lyàng舊的.
3. 那tyáu 河裡頭有魚麼?
4. 有魚. 河上頭有船.
5. 你想坐船到日本去麼?
6. 船太慢. 我想坐fēijī, fēijī快.
7. 日本的山真好看麼?
8. 好看極了. 有一個山, 山上頭都是bái的.
9. 法文很nán, 我學不了.
10. 從舊jīn山坐船到上hǎi去, 十天到不了.
11. 工bīng 沒 bǎ fúchyáu dā 好, 就跑了.
12. 舊車我買得chǐ, 新的買不chǐ.
13. 父親買了一個新船.我們上船看看

好麼?

14. 先生說話都快極了. 你 tīng 懂了沒 tīng 懂?

15. 中國筆, 中國紙都好, 可是用不 chǐ, 沒法子.

C. Story

小王畫畫兒,畫的太慢也畫的不好. 他請了一位 dzwèi 會畫畫兒的張先生教他.

頭一天張先生教他畫一 tyáu 魚, 小王 gāusyìng 極了, 因為他很 ài 吃魚. 一看見一 tyáu 魚, 就能說出這 tyáu 魚的名字來. 所以他畫了一 tyáu 大魚. 畫好了, 他想張先生一定說:「這張畫真好看!」 可是張先生說:「我叫你畫魚, 你為甚麼畫了一 tyáu 船?」

Dì 二天張先生又來了, gēn 小王說:「昨天你畫了一 tyáu 船, 我看你一定 ài 畫船.

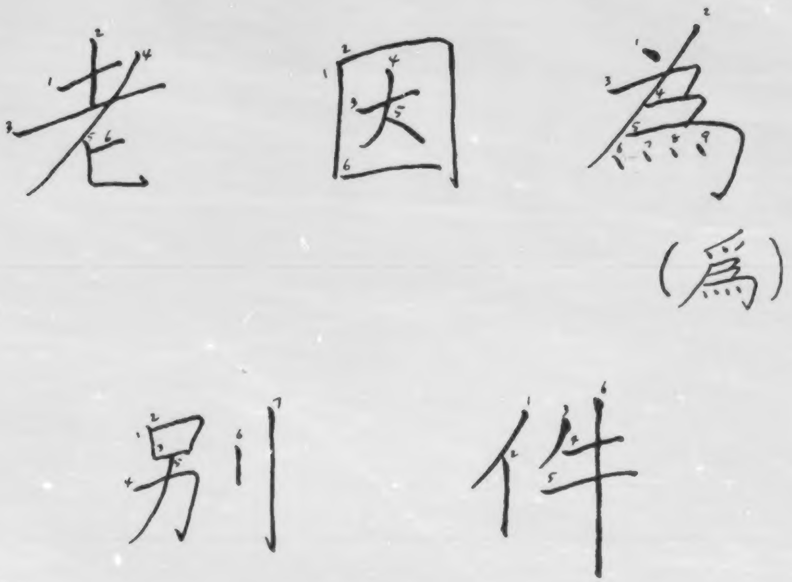
今天你就畫中國船ba.」

小王畫了半天, 畫好了. 張先生看見了說:「昨天我叫你畫魚, 你畫船. 今天我叫你畫船, 你畫魚. 這個不是河裡的大 hēi 魚麼?」 小王很生 chi. 張先生走了以後, 小王用了兩分鐘的時候, 很快的畫了一張畫兒, 他 dz̀jǐ 也不知道畫的是甚麼.

Dì 三天張先生來了, 一看見了那張畫兒就說:「你用 dzwèi 新的法子畫畫兒, 真 tsūng 明!」 因為張先生很有名, 他說那張畫好, 人人也都說好. 後來張先生問小王:「你畫的是甚麼?」 小王說:「你問我, 我問誰?」

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 111-115)



B. Radicals

1. 老 (old, 125) as the word: 老
2. 囗 (enclosure, 31) as in: 因
3. 爫 (claws, 87) as in: 爲
4. 刂 (knife, 18) as in: 别
5. 亻 (man, 9) as in: 件

LESSON 38

I. Structural Dialogue

.	A:	你們 那 兩張 jwō子 一yàng 麼?	Are those two tables of yours the same?
	B:	我們 這 兩張 jwō子 一yàng.	These two tables of ours are the same.
	A:	他們 那 兩個 yǐ子 一yàng 麼?	Are those two chairs of theirs the same?
	B:	也 一yàng.	They are also the same.
2.	A:	你們的 書 都 一yàng 大 麼?	Are your books all of the same size?
	B:	都 一yàng 大.	They are.
	A:	他們 兩個人 錢 一yàng 多 麼?	Do the two of them have the same amount of money?
	B:	一yàng 多, 都有 五 kwài 錢.	The same amount. They both have five dollars.
	A:	他們 兩個人 一yàng gāu 麼?	Are the two of them equally tall?
	B:	一yàng gāu.	Equally tall.

3.	A:	你那兩個男hái子, 你syǐhwan那個?	Which one of your two boys do you like?
	B:	都一yàng syǐhwan.	I like both equally well.
	A:	這三lyàng新chǐ車, 你syǐhwan那lyàng?	Which of these three new cars do you like?
	B:	都一yàng syǐhwan.	I like all of them equally well.
	A:	這兩tyáu lǐngdài, 你買那tyáu?	Which of these two neckties will you buy?
	B:	都一yàng, 那tyáu都行.	They are both the same. Either one will do.
4.	A:	Yǐng國 bǐ 美國大麼?	Is England bigger than America?
	B:	不dwèi. Yǐng國 bǐ 美國小.	That isn't right. England is smaller than America.
	A:	你父親bǐ你母親年chǐng麼?	Is your father younger than your mother?
	B:	不. 我父親bǐ我母親大.	No. My father is older than my mother.

	A:	È文 bǐ 中文 rúngyi 麼?	Is Russian easier than Chinese?
	B:	È文 bǐ 中文 nán.	Russian is harder than Chinese.
	A:	中國人 bǐ 日本人少麼?	Are there less Chinese than Japanese?
	B:	不 dwèi. 中國人 bǐ 日本人多.	No. There are more Chinese than Japanese.
5.	A:	Yīng國 fēijī fēi 的 bǐ È國的快麼?	Are British airplanes faster than Russian airplanes?
	B:	Yīng國 fēijī fēi 的 bǐ È國的快.	British airplanes are faster than Russian airplanes.
	A:	大人吃飯 bǐ 小 hái子吃的快麼?	Do adults eat faster than children?
	B:	大人吃飯 bǐ 小 hái子吃的快.	Yes, adults eat faster than children.
	A:	先生寫字 bǐ 學生寫的快麼?	Do teachers write faster than students?
	B:	Dwèi了. 先生寫字 bi 學生寫的快.	Yes, teachers write faster than students.

	A:	Jàu 太太 唱歌兒 bǐ Jàu 先生 唱的好麼?	Does Mrs. Jàu sing better than Mr. Jàu?
	B:	Jàu 太太 bǐ Jàu 先生 唱的好.	Mrs. Jàu sings better than Mr. Jàu.
6.	A:	你們 兩個人, 誰的 錢多?	Which of you two has more money?
	B:	他有 五kwài, 我有 四kwài, 他 bǐ 我多 一kwài.	He has five dollars and I have four. He has one dollar more than I.
	A:	你 bǐ 他 少 jǐkwài?	How much less do you have than he?
	B:	我 bǐ 他 少 一kwài.	I have one dollar less than he.
	A:	你們 兩個人, 誰的 書多?	Which of you two has more books?
	B:	他有 十本, 我有 四本, 我 bǐ 他 少 六本.	He has ten and I have four. I have six less than he.
	A:	他 bǐ 你 多 jǐ 本?	How many more does he have than you?
	B:	他 bǐ 我 多 六本.	He has six more than I.

A: 他的 bǐ 你的 貴多少 錢 ?	How much more expensive is his than yours?
B: 他的 bǐ 我的 貴一千 三百 kwài.	His is thirteen hundred dollars more than mine.
A: 你的 bǐ 他的 pyányi 多少 錢 ?	How much cheaper is yours than his?
B: 我的 bǐ 他的 pyānyi 一千 三百 kwài 錢 .	Mine is thirteen hundred dollars cheaper than his.
A: 你 哥哥 bǐ 你 大 jǐswèi?	How much older than you is your elder brother?
B: 我 哥哥 bǐ 我 大 三 swèi。	My elder brother is three years older than I.
A: 你 bǐ 你 哥哥 小 jǐswèi?	How much younger are you than your elder brother?
B: 我 bǐ 他 小 三 swèi.	I am three years younger than he.
A: 你 太太的syé bǐ 你多 多少 shwāng?	How many more pairs of shoes does your wife have than you?

	B:	他的 syé bǐ 我的 多二十 shwāng.	She has twenty pairs more than I.
	A:	你的 syé bǐ 他的 pyányi 多少 ?	How much cheaper are your shoes than hers?
	B:	我的 syé bǐ 他的 pyányi 十 kwài 錢 .	My shoes are ten dollars cheaper than hers.
7.	A:	這個 wū子 有 那個 wū子 那麼 lyàng 麼 ?	Is this room as bright as that one?
	B:	這個 wū子 有 那個 wū子 那麼 lyàng.	This room is as bright as that one.
	A:	那個 lóutǐ 沒有 這個 lóutī 這麼 gānjing 麼?	Isn't that stairway as clean as this one?
	B:	那個 lóutǐ 有 這個 lóutǐ 這麼 gānjing.	That stairway is as clean as this one.
	A:	男 hái子 說話 有沒有 女 hái子 說的 這麼 chǐngchu?	Do boys speak as distinctly as girls do?
	B:	男 hái子 說話 有 女 hái子 說的 這麼 chǐngchu.	Boys speak as clearly as girls do.

II. Basic Dialogue

Bái:	張先生，今天 nín 教我念甚麼?	What are you going to teach me to read today, Mr. Jāng?
張:	Shr̀jye 上的 天 chi.	The weather of the world.
Bái:	到我們 jyā 去，好不好? 我們那兒書很多.	How about going to our house? We have many books there.
張:	我也有你們那麼多書，也很方byan.	I have as many books as you, and it is also very convenient there.
Bái:	Nín 說, nín 的書 gēn 我們的一yàng 多, nín 這兒 gēn 我那兒一 yàng 方 byan, dwèi 不 dwèi?	You mean to say that your books match ours in quantity, and your place is just as convenient, right?
張:	Dwèi 了. 今天 rè 麼?	That's right. Is it hot today?
Bái:	我 jywé 得 gēn 昨天一yàng rè.. Yīng國 bǐ 我們這兒 lěng 麼?	I feel that it is about the same as yesterday. Is England colder than here?

張 :	十二月的 時候， 一 yàng lěng.	As cold as it is here in December.
Bái :	八月的時候有我們這兒這麼 rè 麼 ?	Is it as hot as it is here in August?
張 :	他們那兒 bǐ 我們這兒 rè.	It is hotter there than here.
Bái :	Nín syǐhwan 這 yàng 兒的天 chi 麼 ?	Do you like this kind of weather?
張 :	不太 syǐhwan. 我 syǐhwan lěng 的時候 lěng, rè 的 時候 rè.	I don't like it very much. I like the kind of weather that has cold and hot seasons.
Bái :	一年老不 lěng 不 rè, 沒意思.	Yes, it is uninteresting when it is mild all year round.
張 :	Shr̀jye 上 dzwèi lěng 的地方在那兒, 你知道麼?	Do you know where the coldest place in the world is?
Bái :	我想 shr̀jye 上 dzwèi lěng 的地方是 Běi 極. 那一dài 的人有我們這麼 gāu 麼 ?	I think the coldest place is the North Pole. Are the people in that region as tall as we are?

張:	Bǐ 我們 ǎi. 我們 chà 不多都 bǐ 他們 gāu.	They are shorter than we are. Almost all of us are taller than they are.
Bái:	他們吃的東西有我們吃的這麼好麼 ?	Do they eat as well as we do?
張:	我們吃的 bǐ 他們的好 ·	We eat better than they.
Bái:	Jù 的地方一 yàng 好麼 ?	Are their houses as good as ours?
張:	我們的 bǐ 他們的好 ·	Ours are better than theirs.
Bái:	他們 yè 裏 gēn 我們一 yàng cháng 麼 ?	Are their nights as long as ours?
張:	有的時候 bǐ 我們的 dwǎn, 有的時候 bǐ 我們的 cháng.	Their nights are sometimes shorter and sometimes longer than ours.
Bái:	Cháng 多少 ?	How much longer?
張:	他們有半年是在 yè 裏 ·	For half a year there is only darkness.

Vocabulary

138.	ǎi	矮	SV:	be short (opp. gāu)
139.	Běijí	北極	N:	North Pole
139.1	yídài	一帶	NU-M:	area of land, region
140.	bǐ	比	V/CV:	compared with; than
141.	dwǎn	短	SV:	be short (opp. cháng)
142.	dzèmma	這麼	A:	in this way, to this degree, so
142.1	jèmma	這麼	A:	in this way, to this degree, so
143.	fāngbyan	方便	SV:	be convenient
144.	lěng	冷	SV:	be cold
145.	nèmma	那麼	A:	in that way, to that degree, so
146.	rè	熱	SV:	be hot
147.	shr̀jye(shang)	世界(上)	N:	in the world
148.	tyānchi	天氣	N:	weather
149.	-yàng	樣	M:	kind, sort, way
149.1	yàngdz	樣子	N:	style, appearance; sample
149.2	yíyàng	一樣	SV: A:	be the same, alike, similar equally, similarly
150.	yǒu	有	CV:	be as much as; be as

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Similarity

There are two ways to indicate similarity: the co-verb pattern gēn (with, and) and the verb pattern yǒu (be as much as).

1.1 Co-verb pattern gēn:

To indicate similarity between A and B, gēn is used between **A** and B, and then the word yíyàng (the same) is used which may be followed by a stative verb.

Jèige gēn nèige yíyang.	This is the same as that.
Jèige gēn nèige yíyang dà.	This is the same as that in size.
Nèige gēn jèige chàbudwō yíyang cháng.	That is about the same as this in length.
Wǒ gēn tā yíyàng gāu.	I am as tall as he.

1.2 Verb pattern yǒu:

To indicate similarity between A and B, yǒu is used between A and B, and then the word jèmma (this), nèmma (that) or dzèmma (this) is used which is followed by a stative verb.

Jèige yǒu nèige (nèmma) dà.	This is the same as that in size.
Nèige yǒu jèige (jèmma) cháng.	That is the same as this in length.
Wǒ yǒu tā (dzèmma) gāu.	I am as tall as he.
Tāde chìchē yǒu nǐde (jèmma) hǎu.	His car is as good as yours.

Translate the following:

1) Is the weather in China the same as in America?
2) Yes, the weather in China is about the same as that in America.
3) Is Běiping as cold as New York in December?
4) Yes, Běiping is as cold as New York in December.

5) Běipíng is as hot as New York in August.

6) His clothes are as dirty as mine, however they can all be washed clean.

7) Mr. Wáng has moved. His new house is as big as his old house.

2. Comparison with bǐ:

To express comparison between A and B, the co-verb bǐ (in comparison with) is used between A and B, and then a stative verb is used. An expression to show the quantity or degree difference may be used after the stative verb.

Jèige bǐ nèige dà.	This is larger than that.
Jèige bǐ nèige dà yìdyǎr.	This is a little larger than that.
Nèige bǐ jèige pyányi yíkwài chyán.	That is one dollar cheaper than this.
Wǒ bǐ nǐ dà yíswèi.	I am one year older than you.

Note that in comparisons with bǐ, the negative particle bù always precedes the bǐ rather than the SV. For example one says:

Jèige chìchē bùbǐ nèige gwèi, NOT Jèige chìchē bǐ nèige bùgwèi.

Note also that bǐ is used when both of the objects to be compared are expressed. When that with which something is being compared is clear from the context, the simpler form of comparison introduced in Lesson 9 (III, note 3) is sufficient:

Jèi lyǎngge shān něige gāu?	Which of these two hills is higher?
Jèige shān gāu (for Jèige shān bǐ nèige gāu).	This one is higher (than that one).

Translate the following:

1) This method is more convenient than that method.

2) American food is easier to prepare than Chinese food.

3) The kitchen in this house is bigger than the kitchen in that house.

4) I am staying in a hotel and not in a friend's house, because it is more convenient in a hotel than in a friend's house.

5) Your food is better than the food in a restaurant.

6) This is an American pen, and that is a Japanese pen. The American pen is two dollars more expensive than that Japanese pen.

7) He is taller than his girl friend, but his girl friend is three months older than he.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Indication of Similarity

A: Indication of similarity with co-verb gēn

這個wū子的 chwānghu gēn 那個 wū子的 chwānghu 一 yàng.	The windows in this room are similar to those in that room.

or 這個 wū 子的 chwānghu gēn 那個 wū 子的(chwānghu) 一yàng.

A gēn B yíyàng

Examples:

1) 先生的書 gēn 學生的書一 yàng.	The teacher's and the students' books are the same.
2) 這兒的天 chi gēn 舊 jīn山 chà不多一 yàng 麼 ?	Is the weather here almost the same as that of San Francisco?
3) Shr̄jǎng gēn Yíngjǎng chwān 的 jyūnfú 不一yàng 麼?	Isn't the uniform worn by the division commander the same as that of the battalion commander?
4) 他走路 gēn 他父親一yàng.	He walks (in) the same (manner) as his father.

Exercise:

Answer the following orally:

1) Èrlóude lóutī gēn sānlóude lóutī yíyàng ma?

2) Jèisye wūdzde mén dōu gēn èrlóu yíyàng ma?

3) Kāi jànchē gēn kāi dzàijùngchē chàbudwō yíyàng ma?

4) Nǐ kàn dzài Řběn rēngde diyíge ywándždàn gēn dièrge yíyàng ma?

5) Bùbīng gēn pàubīng dàide gāngkwēi yíyàng buyíyàng?

B: Indication of similarity with co-verb gēn and with the stative verb following the word yíyàng

Jāng:	這個 chwānghu gēn 那個 chwānghu 一 yàng.	This window is similar to that window.
Wáng:	甚麼一 yàng?	Similar in what way?
Jāng:	這個 wū 子的 chwānghu gēn 那個 wū 子的 chwānghu 一 yàng 大.	The window in this room is just as large as the window in that room.

or 這個 wū子的chwānghu gēn那個 wū子 的 (chwānghu)一yàng 大.

A gēn B yíyàng SV

Examples:

1) Jyūngwān的 màu 子gēn bīng 的 màu 子 一yàng 好看.	The officer's hat is just as good looking as that of the soldier.
2) 放kǎbīnchyāng gēn放 bù-chyāng 一yàng rúngyi.	It is just as easy to fire a carbine as it is to fire a rifle.
3) 美國人開 fēijī 開 chì 車都 gēn E國人 一yàng 好.	The American is just as good as the Russian in driving a car as well as in piloting a plane.

4) 小弟弟gēn 小 mèimei chwān的 syé 一yàng 小.	The shoes worn by the little brother and little sister are equally small.

Exercise:

Answer the following orally:

1) Nǐ fùchin gēn nǐ mǔchin chàbudwō yíyàng lǎu ma?

2) Dā fúchyáu gēn dā píngchángde chyáu yíyàng nán ma?

3) Dzwò chìchē gēn dzwò hwǒchē yíyàng fāngbyan ma?

4) Hǎijyūn gēn kūngjyūn yùngde lǐngdài yíyàng buyíyàng cháng?

C: Indication of similarity with the verb yǒu and nèmma, jèmma or dzèmma

這 kwài hēibǎn 有 那 kwài hēibǎn 那麼 gāu.	This blackboard is just as high as that blackboard.

or 這 kwài hēibǎn 有那 kwài(hēibǎn) 那麼gāu.

A	yǒu	B	nèmma (or jèmma, dzèmma)	SV

Examples:

1) Nán 極的天chi 也有Běi 極的天 chi那麼 lěng ba?	Is the weather just as cold at the South Pole as at the North Pole?
2) 坐船有坐 chì 車那麼 pyányi 麼?	Is going by ship just as cheap as going by car?

3) Hái子看見父親的時候有看見母親這麼gāusyìng沒有？	When the child sees his father, is he as happy as when he sees his mother?
4) 他dì一tsż gēn你 tán話有沒有 dì二tsż 這麼kèchi?	Was he as polite the first time he talked with you as he was the second time?
5) 他jywé得張先生，Lǐ先生都有王先生這麼會說syàu話.	He feels that both Mr. Jang and Mr. Li can tell jokes as well as Mr. Wang.

Exercise:

Answer the following orally:

1) Jèige wūdz yǒu lóusyà (or lóushang)de wūdz nèmma lyàng ma?

2) Měigwode hé yě yǒu shṙjyèshang byéde gwóde jèmma cháng ma?

3) Měigwo rén syěde shū yǒu méiyou Yīnggwo rén syěde jèmma yǒuyìsz?

4) Nǐ jṙdau Lùjyūnfùnyǔdwèi yǒu Kūngjyūnfùnyǔdwèide nyǔbīng dzèmma dwō ma?

5) Nyǔ sywésheng yǒu méiyou nán sywésheng syědż dzèmma chīngchu?

Pattern 2

Comparison with bǐ

A: Comparison with co-verb bǐ and a stative verb

他父親bǐ他母親大.	His father is older than his mother.

A	bǐ	B	SV

Examples:

1) 女人 bǐ 男人ǎi.	Women are shorter than men.
2) Yīng國人 不bǐ 美國人好看 ba.	Britishers are not more handsome than Americans, I suppose.
3) 以後我們看中國書一定 bǐ syàn在快.	In the future we will definitely be faster in reading Chinese.
4) 那個 syépù bǐ 這個 syépù 做的 syé shūfu.	The shoes made by that shoe store are more comfortable than those of this shoe store.
5) Gāushèpàu gēn jànfángpàu 很nán 說那個 bǐ 那個有用.	It is very difficult to say if an anti-aircraft gun or an anti-tank gun is more useful.
6) 這兩個 tsài我 hái是 syǐhwan 吃dì一個.	Of these two courses, I still prefer the first course.

Exercise:

Answer the following orally:

1) Nǐde nyǔpéngyou bǐ nǐ nyánchīng ma?
2) Dǎjàng yǐhòu nánrén bǐ nyǔrén shǎu ma?
3) Běijí bǐ shr̀jyèshang byéde dìfang lěng ma?
4) Fàgwo rén hwàde hwàr bǐ shr̀jyèshang byéde gwóde rén hǎu ma?
5) Tàitai dōu bǐ syānsheng ài shwōhwà ma?
6) Jèi lyǎngjyan yīshangde yàngdz něijyan bǐ něijyan syīn?

B: Degree of comparison with an expression to show the quantity or degree of difference following the stative verb

他父親七十swèi, 他母親六十八 swèi, 我二十 swèi.	His father is 70, his mother 68, I am 20.
1) 他父親 bǐ他母親大兩 swèi.	His father is two years older than his mother.
2) 他父親bǐ 他母親大一 dyǎr.	His father is a little older than his mother.
3) 他父親 bǐ我大 五十 swèi.	His father is fifty years older than I am.
4) 他父親bǐ 我大的多 (or 大多了, 大很多).	His father is quite a bit older than I am.

A bǐ B SV NU-M-N

A bǐ B SV yidyǎr (de dwō, hěn dwō, dwōle)

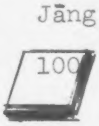
Examples:

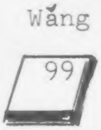
1) Bùchyāng bǐ 手 chyāng jùng 一 dyǎr.	Rifles are a bit heavier than pistols.
2) San Jose 的天 chi bǐ這個城 rè 一 dyǎr, 可是 Nyǒu-ywē bǐ 這兒 rè 的多.	San Jose is a bit hotter than this city , but New York is quite a bit hotter than this place.
3) 說法文 bǐ 說中文 rúngyi 一 dyǎr, 可是寫法文 bǐ 寫中國字 rúngyi 多了.	Speaking French is a bit easier than speaking Chinese, but writing French words is quite a bit easier than writing Chinese.

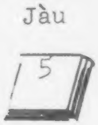
4) 中國 bàu bǐ 美國bàu 貴 五分錢 .	Chinese papers are five cents more than American newspapers.
5) 一月 bǐ 二月多三天.有的時候多兩天.	January has three more days than February. Occasionally it has two more days.

Exercise:

Answer the following questions orally as the illustrations indicate:







Ex: Q: Lǎu Jāngde shū bǐ Lǎu Wángde shū dwō yìdyǎr ma?

A: Lǎu Jāngde shū bǐ Lǎu Wángde shū dwō yìdyǎr.

Q: Lǎu Jāngde shū bǐ Lǎu Wángde shū dwō jǐběn?

A: Lǎu Jāngde shū bǐ Lǎu Wángde shū dwō yìběn.

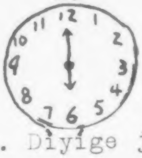
Q: Lǎu Jāngde shū bǐ Lǎu Jàude shū dwōde dwō ma?

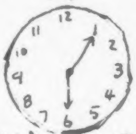
A: Lǎu Jāngde shū bǐ Lǎu Jàude shū dwōde dwō.

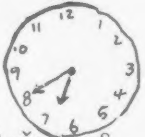
Q: Lǎu Jāngde shū bǐ Lǎu Jàude shū dwō dwōshau běn?

A: Lǎu Jāngde shū bǐ Lǎu Jàude shū dwō jyǒushrwǔběn.

(A)

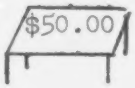
(1)


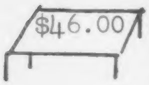
(2)


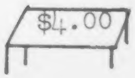
(3)


1. Dìyíge jūng bǐ dièrge jūng màn yìdyǎr ma?
2. Dìyíge jūng bǐ dièrge jūng màn jǐfen jūng?
3. Dìyíge jūng bǐ dìsānge jūng màn̄de dwō ma?
4. Dìyíge jūng bǐ dìsānge jūng màn dwōshaufēn jūng?

(B) Jūnggwo Fàgwo Dégwo







5. Jūnggwo jwōdz bǐ Fàgwo jwōdz gwèi yìdyǎr ma?

6. Jūnggwo jwōdz bǐ Fàgwo jwōdz gwèi jǐkwài chyán?

7. Jūnggwo jwōdz bǐ Dégwo jwōdz gwèi hěn dwō ma?

8. Jūnggwo jwōdz bǐ Dégwo jwōdz gwèi dwōshau chyán?

9. Jūnggwo jwōdz gēn Fàgwo jwōdz dōu bǐ Dégwo jwōdz gwèi ma?

10. Dégwo jwōdz tùbǐ Fàgwo jwōdz pyányi ma?

(C)

Nánjīng	Běipíng	Shànghǎi
104°	100°	85°

11. Nánjīngde tyānchi bǐ Běipíng rè yìdyǎr ba?

12. Nánjīngde tyānchi bǐ Běipíng rè jǐdù?*

13. Nánjīngde tyānchi bǐ Shànghǎi rède dwō ma?

14. Nánjīngde tyānchi bǐ Shànghǎi rè dwōshau dù?

15. Nánjīng, Běipíng, Shànghǎi jèisānge dìfang, nǎr dzwèi rè?

* dù: N degree

Homework

Render the following sentences into Chinese orally:

1) Is the style of this chair similar to that of the other?

2) Is the ponton built by the French troops quite similar to that built by the British troops?

3) Is riding on a bus as convenient as riding on a train? (use yǒu pattern)

4) I don't know whether Beiping is as hot as Shanghai.

5) Is it colder outside than inside the room? (use bǐ pattern)

6) These buildings are all lower than that hill. (use bǐ pattern)

7) Small cars are a bit cheaper than large ones. But they are quite a bit cheaper than planes.

8) My sister is about five or six inches shorter than her boy friend.

V. Reading

A. Characters (Nos.182 - 188)

182.	願 愿	ywàn	BF:	willing to, wish to	願意	wish to, willing to
183.	幫 帮	bāng	V :	help	幫 ju	help
					幫忙	help out
					幫我作這個	help me do this
184.	忙	máng	SV:	be busy	幫忙	help (somebody)
					忙不忙	busy or not?
185.	找	jǎu	V :	look for, hunt for	找人	look for a person
					找 lyǔgwǎn	look for a hotel
186.	最	dzwèi	A :	the most, -est	最好	it would be best......
					最有意思	most interesting
187.	應 应	yīng [yìng]	BF:	should, ought to	應當去	should go
188.	當 当	dāng	BF:	should, ought to	不應當買	should not buy
			V :	to be a (doctor, teacher, etc.) act as	當 bīng	join the Army

B. Sentences

1. 你願意幫甚麼人的忙?

2. 誰找我幫忙,我就幫誰忙.

3. 他最忙. 你應當幫他忙.

4. 上hǎi 的天chì gēn 舊jīn 山一yàng 麼?

5. 火車bǐ船方byan, 也bǐ船走的快.

6. 我這件衣shang的yàng子沒有你那件
   那麼新.

7. Shr̀jye 上最gāu 的lóu 在美國, bǐ
   那國的lóu 都gāu.

8. Běi極 lěng極了. 誰願意到那個地方
   去?

9. 下山有沒有上山這麼慢?

10. 先生寫中國字,寫的bǐ學生快多了.

11. 為甚麼弟弟的筆gēn 哥哥的一yàng?

12. 男人開車真bǐ女人開的好麼?

13. 母親天天都忙極了.老說時候不夠.

14. 請別問他：「你太太有沒有這位小 jye 那麼好看？」

C. Story

王先生很會作買賣. 在他們那個城裡頭他最有錢.

張三是王先生的老朋友;從前很有錢,現在沒錢了; 想去找王先生,請王先生幫他忙. 他知道王先生一定很願意幫他忙.

有一天他 gēn 王先生說：「你可以幫我一 dyǎn 兒忙麼？」

王先生說：「老朋友！我一定幫你忙. 你有甚麼事？」

張三說：「Syàn 在我沒錢了.」

王先生說：「你應當幫 je 我作買賣.」

張三說：「我知道我應當找一 dyǎn 兒事作. 可是我不會作買賣.」

王先生說：「不要 jǐn, 我教你作買賣.

我想你一定學得好.」

張三說:「你教我 ba.」

王先生說:「作買賣最要 jǐn 的事就是賣東西. 你得知道,買東西的人都想用最少的錢買最好的東西. 所以你得說我們的東西最好, 最 pyányi. 你也可以說,這個筆今天賣五毛,明天就賣五毛五了. 你也可以說,我也 chwān 這 yàng 兒的 chènshān,這件 yǐjing chwān 了八九年了. 你也可以說這 tyáu lǐngdài,我們賣四 kwài 錢, 別人賣六 kwài.」

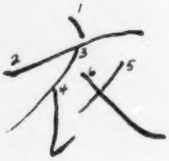
張三說:「不那麼說行不行?」

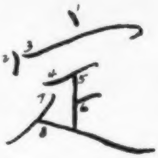
王先生說:「不行. 要是不那麼說,東西賣不出去.」

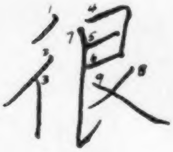
張三說:「我去找別的事 ba

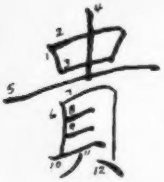
VI. WRITING

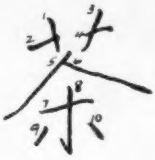
A. Writing (Characters 116-120)











B. Radicals

1. 衣 (clothes,149)as the word: 衣
2. 宀 (roof, 40) as in: 定
3. 彳 (to pace, 60) as in: 很
4. 貝 (shell, 154) as in: 貴
5. 艹 (gross, 140) as in: 茶

C. Dictionary Drill

Sixty Common Chinese Radicals - "Nature" Group

Radical Number	Name	Radical	English Meaning	Examples
32	t'í-t'ǔ·erh	土 土	Soil	堯地在坐報
46	shān	山	Mountain	岡崎島岩
72	jìh	日	Sun	明昨春早
75	mù	木	Wood	枝桑李
85	sān-tiěn-erh-shwěi-erh	氵 氺 水	Water	河沒泉泰
86	sż-tiěn-erh-huǒ	火 灬	Fire	熨燒照熱營

1. **Exercise:** Find from the dictionary Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
坑			無		
松			坦		
灰			岔		
墜			嶇		
灸			杏		
棟			昏		
浮			岑		
炊			氷		
晃			染		
曉			岸		
治			灾		

2. Home Work: Find from the dictionary Wade-Giles romanization and meaning for the following characters:

	Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning		Wade-Giles Romanization	Meaning
埋			培		
晒			峯		
械			昔		
堂			某		
岱			漿		
柔			暫		
泪			災		
圭			煎		
岳			查		
旱			潮		
果			炮		

LESSON 39

I. Structural Dialogue

1.	A:	我們兩個人誰的錢多?	Which of the two of us has more money?
	B:	你有五kwài錢，我有三毛錢，我的沒有你的多.	You have five dollars, and I have thirty cents. I don't have as much as you do.
	A:	你有你哥哥那麼gāu麼?	Are you as tall as your elder brother?
	B:	我沒有他那麼gāu. 他gāu, 我ǎi.	I am not as tall as he. He is tall and I am short.
	A:	你的表有我的那麼貴麼?	Is your watch as expensive as mine?
	B:	我的很pyányi, 沒有你的那麼貴.	Mine is very cheap, not as expensive as yours.
	A:	我的Yīng文有你說的那麼好麼?	Is my spoken English as good as yours?

L. 39

B:	你的Yīng文沒有我説的好, 可是我的中國話沒有你説的好.	Your spoken English is not as good as mine, but my spoken Chinese is not as good as yours.
A:	我的衣shang有你的那麼cháng麼?	Are my clothes as long as yours?
B:	你的沒有我的cháng. 我的cháng多了.	Yours are not as long as mine. Mine are much longer.
A:	你的手有我的大麼?	Are your hands as big as mine?
B:	我的最小, 沒有你的大. 你的bǐ我的大的多.	Mine are the smallest and are not as big as yours. Yours are much bigger than mine.
A:	你兒子有我兒子tsūng明麼?	Is your son as intelligent as mine?
B:	你兒子fēicháng tsūng明, 我的兒子沒你的兒子那麼tsūng明.	Your son is exceedingly intelligent; mine is not as intelligent as yours.

2.	A:	Chwán 有没有火車走的那麼快?	Does a boat go as fast as a train?
	B:	Chwán 没有火車走的那麼快.	A boat does not go as fast as a train.
	A:	E國人開 fēijī 有没有美國人開的那麼好?	Do Russians fly airplanes as well as Americans?
	B:	E國人開 fēijī 没有美國人開的那麼好.	Russians do not fly airplanes as well as Americans.
	A:	小 hái 子有没有大人 rēng 東西 rēng 的那麼遠?	Can children throw things as far as grownups do?
	B:	小 hái 子没有大人 rēng 東西 rēng 的那麼遠.	Children cannot throw things as far as grownups do.
3.	A:	這兩 lyàng chì 車那個好?	Which is the better of these two cars?
	B:	這 lyàng 好, 可是那 lyàng gèng 好.	This one is good, but that one is even better.
	A:	美國的地方大不大?	Does America have a large area?
	B:	美國的地方大, 中國	The area of the United States is large,

的 gèng 大, E 國的 最大.	China's is even larger, but Russia's is the largest.
A: 中國的 河 cháng 麼?	Are China's rivers long?
B: 中國的 河 很 cháng, 可是 E國的 河 gèng cháng, 美國的 最 cháng.	Rivers in China are very long, but those in Russia are even longer. American rivers are the longest.
A: Yīng國的 fēijī fēi的 快 麼?	Do British airplanes fly fast?
B: Yīng國的 很 快, E國的 gèng 快, 美國的 最 快.	British airplanes fly very fast; Russian airplanes even faster, and American airplanes the fastest.
A: 那國的 gāushèpàu 好?	Which country has better anti-aircraft guns?
B: 法國的 很 好, 日本 的 gèng 好, 美國的 最 好.	France's are very good, Japan's are

	even better, and America's are the best.
A: 那國的 jànfángpàu 最好?	Which country has the best antitank guns?
B: Shr̀jye 上 Dé國的 很好, È國的 gèng 好, 美國的 最好 .	Germany has very good antitank guns, Russia has even better ones and America has the best in the world.
A: Shr̀jye 上 那國的 bùchyāng 最 dwăn?	Which country has the shortest rifles in the world?
B: 中國的 很 dwăn, Yĭng國的 gèng dwăn, 美國的 最 dwăn.	China has very short ones, England has even shorter ones, and America has the shortest.
4. A: 誰的 syé 最新 ?	Who has the newest shoes?
B: 王上校的 很新 , gāng 買了 兩個 lĭbài.	Col Wáng's shoes are very new; they

		were bought just two weeks ago.
	A: Lǐ 中校的 新不新?	Are Lt Col Lǐ's new?
	B: Gèng 新, gāng 買了 一個 lǐbài.	They are even newer. They were bought just a week ago.
	A: 張 少校的 新不新?	Are Maj Jāng's new?
	B: 他的 最新, gāng 買了 一個 鐘頭.	His are the newest; they were bought just an hour ago.
5.	A: 你說的 syàu話 gēn 他說的 syàu話 一yàng 不一yàng?	Are your jokes and his jokes the same?
	B: 我說的 syàu話 gēn 他說的 syàu話 不一yàng.	My jokes and his jokes are not the same.
	A: 誰說的 syàu話 有意思?	Whose jokes are interesting?
	B: 都很有意思.	They are all interesting.

II. Basic Dialogue

Bái:	張先生，今天我念甚麼?	What shall I study today, Mr. Jāng?
張:	今天 我們 tántan shr̀jyè-大 jàn.	Let us talk about world wars today.
Bái:	Dì — tsz̀ Shr̀jyè 大 jàn 麼?	About World War I?
張:	好 。 Dì — tsz̀ Shr̀jyè 大 jàn, 從 一九一四 到 一九一八 。	Fine. World War I, from 1914 to 1918.
Bái:	Dé國的 wǔchì fēicháng lìhai ba?	German weapons were extraordinarily powerful, I suppose.
張:	Dé國的 wǔchi 很 lìhai, Yīng-國的 gèng lìhai, 美國的 最 lìhai.	German weapons were very powerful, British weapons were even more powerful and American weapons were the most powerful.
Bái:	Nín jì得 那 時候的fēijī 麼 ?	Do you still remember the airplanes of those days?
張:	我 jì得、所有的 fēijī 都	Yes, I do. All

	fēi的 很 dī.	airplanes then flew very low.
Bái:	Fēi 的 快 不快 ?	Did they fly fast?
張:	沒有 Dì 二 tsz̀ Shr̀jyè 大 jàn的 飛機 飛的 那麼 快.	Not as fast as the airplanes in World War II.
Bái:	Dì 二 tsz̀ Shr̀jyè 大 jàn 那國的 wǔchì 最 lìhai?	Which country had the most powerful weapons in World War II?
張:	那要看 甚麼 wǔchi.	That depends on what weapons you are talking about.
Bái:	Fēijī, 那國的 好 ?	Which country had better airplanes?
張:	Dé國的 不 tswò, 可是 沒有 我們的 好.	German airplanes weren't bad, but not as good as ours.
Bái:	Dì 一 tsz̀ Shr̀jyè 大 jàn 用了 ywán子 wǔchì 沒有 ?	Were atomic weapons used in World War I or not?

張:	Dì 一 tsz Shr̀jyè 大 jàn 沒有 ywán 子 wǔchì. Dì 二 tsz 就 用 ywán 子 dàn 了. Dì 三 tsz̀ kǔngpà 要 用 很 多 ywán 子 wǔchì.	They were not used in World War I. In World War II the atomic bomb was used. It is feared that many atomic weapons will be used in World War III.
Bái:	Syàn 在 shr̀jye 上 所有的 國 都 yùbei dǎjàng 麼?	Are all the nations in the world preparing for war now?
張:	他們 都 不能 不 yùbei, 就 kǔngpa 有 jàn 事.	They cannot but prepare; they are only afraid that there will be a war.
Bái:	Dì 一 tsz̀ Shr̀jyè 大 jàn 的 wǔchì 已 jing 很 lìhai 了, dì 二 tsz̀ Shr̀jyè 大 jàn 的 wǔchì gèng lìhai, Dì 三 tsz̀ Shr̀jyè 大 jàn 的 wǔchì 一定 最 lìhai. 你 想 怎麼 yàng?	Weapons were very powerful in World War I, more powerful in World War II; and certainly will be most powerful in World War III.

		What do you think?
張:	我也那麼想. 就 syīwáng shr̀jye 上所有的國都不 dǎjàng.	I think so too. I just hope that all nations in the world will not go to war.
Bái:	Dì 二 tsz̀ Shr̀jyè 大 jàn 的時候 nín 在那兒?	Where were you during World War II?
張:	我先在 Yīng國, 後來到法國去了.	At first I was in England, and then I went to France.
Bái:	那時候, 吃的東西不夠 ba.	Then food was short, I suppose.
張:	Dwèi 了. 不太夠, 所以那時候我 bǐ syàn 在 shòu 的多.	Right. Food was not very plentiful, therefore I was much thinner at that time than I am now.
Bái:	Syàn 在 nín 沒有我父親那麼 pàng ba.	Now you are not as stout as my father, I suppose.

張:	我們的 swèishù 兒 都 一 yàng, 可是 我 bǐ 他 shòu 一 dyǎn 兒 .	We are of the same age, but I am somewhat thinner than he is.
Bái:	昨天 他們 jyā 有 一位 kè 人 , pàng 極了.	Yesterday they had a guest at their home, and he was extremely fat.
張:	是 誰 ?	Who was he?
Bái:	是 Gāu Shr̄jǎng. 他 bǐ 我 父親 pàng 多了 .	He was Division Commander Gāu. He was much stouter than my father.
張:	Dwèi 了 . 在 Dì 五 shr̄ 裡頭 他最 pàng.	Right. He is the stoutest man in the Fifth Division.

L. 39

Vocabulary

151.	dī	低	SV:	be low
152.	dzěmmayàng	怎麼樣	IE:	how about....? how's everything?
153.	fēi	飛	V:	fly
154.	fēicháng	非常	A:	unusually, extraordinarily
155.	gèng	更	A:	still more, even
156.	jìde	記得	V:	remember, recollect
157.	jr̄	隻	M:	(measure for hands, feet, chicken, cat, etc.)
158.	kèren	客人	N:	guest
159.	lìhai	利害	SV:	be fierce, strong, severe
160.	nà yàu kàn	那要看	IE:	it all depends on.....
161.	pàng	胖	SV:	be fat (of persons), stout
162.	shòu	瘦	SV:	be thin (opp. pàng)
163.	shr̀jyè-dàjàn	世界大戰	N:	World War
164.	swèishu	歲數	N:	age (year count)
165.	swǒyǒude	所有的	N:	all one has, all there are, all of the

166.	wǔchì 武器	N:	weapon
166.1	ywándž wǔchì 原子 武器	N:	atomic weapon

III. Grammar Analysis

1. Dissimilarity

Dissimilarity is expressed by the negative form of similarity as explained in the previous lesson.

1.1 Co-verb SV pattern A gen B bùyíyang:

To indicate dissimilarity between A and B, gēn is used between A and B, and then the word bùyíyàng is used which may be followed by a stative verb. Instead of affixing bù to yíyang, bù may be affixed to gēn but is not so commonly used.

Jèige gēn nèige buyíyàng.	This is not the same as that.
Jèige gēn nèige búyíyàng dà.	This is not the same as that in size.
Nèige gēn jèige bùyíyàng cháng.	That is not the same as this in length.
Jèige gēn nèige bùyíyàng dà.	This is not the same as that in size.
Wǒ gēn tā bùyíyàng gāu.	He and I are not of the same height.

1.2 Verb pattern méiyóu:

To indicate dissimilarity between A and B, méiyou is used between A and B, and then the word jèmma (this), nèmma (that) or dzèmma (this) is used which is followed by a stative verb.

Jèige méiyou nèige nèmma dà.	This is not as big as that.
Nèige méiyou jèige jèmma cháng.	That is not as long as this.
Wǒ méiyou tā nèmma gāu.	I am not as tall as he.
Tāde chìchē méiyou nǐde dzèmma hǎu.	His car is not as good as yours.

Translate the following:

1) My house is not as good as yours, but it is very convenient.
2) His children are not as intelligent as yours, but they are very polite.
3) Food in this restaurant is not as expensive as that restaurant, but it is very delicious.

4) This truck is not as big as that one, but it is just as new.
5) I am not as tall as he nor am I as fat as he.
6) My illness is not as serious as his.
7) This weapon is not as powerful as that weapon.

2. Degrees of comparison with adverbs gèng and dzwèi:

An adjective in English has three degrees, for instance: good, better (comparative degree) and best (superlative degree).

2.1 Comparative degree:

There are two ways to show comparative degree in Chinese:

by context and by explicit comparative expressions.

2.11 By context:

Háishr jèige hǎu.	I still think this is better.
Wǒ yàu jèige; jèige cháng.	I want this one, this is longer.

2.12 By explicit comparative expressions.

Certain words are used in the sentence which show explicitly that the adjectives are in the comparative degree. Such words are (yì)dyǎr (a little), dwōle,-de dwō (much), hái (still), gèng (even) or bǐ (compare) in a comparison construction.

Tā jīntyan hǎu yìdyǎr le.	He is a little better today.
Tā shòu dyǎr le.	He is a little thinner now.
Jèige cháng yìdyǎr, nèige chángde dwō.	This is a little longer, and that is much longer.
Jèrde tyānchi bǐ nèrde rè.	The weather here is warmer than there.
Jèige fángdz dà; nèige hái dà.	This house is big, but that one is even bigger.
Nǐde shū hěn dwō; tāde shū gèng dwō.	You have very many books, but he has even more.

2.2 Superlative degree :

The adverb dzwèi (the most, -est) is used for the superlative degree.

Tāmen sānwèi syānsheng, něiwèide Yīngwén dzwèi hǎu?	Of these three teachers, whose English is the best?
Jāng Syānshengde yīngwén dzwèi hǎu.	Mr. Jāng's English is the best.
Wǒ kāi chē kāide kwài; wǒ tàitai kāide gèng kwài; wǒ érdz kāide dzwèi kwài.	I drive fast, my wife drives faster, but my son drives the fastest.
Ywándždàn dzwèi lìhai.	Atomic bombs are most powerful.

Translate the following:

1) Mrs. Wáng is thin, but Mr. Wáng is even thinner.
2) During World War I, weapons were powerful, but during World War II, weapons were even more powerful.
3) This chair is higher; that chair is lower.
4) I don't like the weather here; I like it a little warmer.
5) It is much colder today than yesterday.
6) David, your face is dirty, and your hands are even dirtier.
7) I have three sons. The eldest son is the most intelligent.
8) My youngest son is the tallest.
9) I have ten neckties. This one is best looking and also most expensive.

IV. Pattern Drill

Pattern 1

Dissimilarity

A) 這個山 pàu gēn 那個山 pàu 不一yàng.

This mountain piece is not the same as that.

A gēn B 不一yàng.

B) 這個山pàu gēn 那個山pàu 不一yàng 大.

This mountain piece is not of the same size as that.

A gēn B 不一yàng SV

Examples:

1) Chīngjīchyāng gēn jùngjīchyāng 不一yàng.

The light machine gun is not the same as the heavy machine gun.

2) 子dàn gēn pàudàn 不一yàng 大.

Bullets and shells are not of the same size.

Exercise:

Say the following and render it into English orally:

1) Jèige háidz gēn nèige háidz bùyiyàng gāu.

2) Jèi lyǎngge háidz bùyiyàng gāu.

3) Jèitǐng jīgwānchyāng gēn nèitǐng jīgwānchyāng bùyiyàng.

4) Jèi lyǎngtǐng jīgwānchyāng bùyiyàng.

5) R̀běn dzàijùngchē gēn Dégwo dzàijùngchē bùyiyàng jùng.

6) Měigwode shān gēn Jūnggwode shān bùyiyàng gāu.

7) Běipíngde fángdz gēn Jyòujīnshānde fángdz bùyiyàng.

8) Jūnggwo kwàidz gēn Rběn kwàidz bùyiyàng.

9) Syāngsyade pùdz gēn chénglide pùdz bùyiyàng.

10) Tāmende tóu yíyàng dà. Tāmende shǒu bùyiyàng dà.

11) Tāmen lyǎngge rénde swèishu bùyiyàng ma?

12) Dìyìtsż̀ shr̀jyèdàjàn yùngde wǔchì gēn dièrtsż̀ shr̀jyèdàjàn yùngde wǔchì bùyiyàng ma?

13) Jèishwāng kwàidz, dzèmma jèijr̄de yàngdz gēn nèijr bùyiyàng?

C) Ch車 沒有 fēijī 那麼快. Automobiles are not as fast as airplanes.

A 沒有 B 那麼 SV

Examples:

1) Lóu下 沒有 lóu 上 那麼 lyàng. It is not as bright downstairs as upstairs.

2) Kǎbīnchyāng沒有 jīgwānchyāng 那麼 lìhai. Carbines are not as powerful as machine guns.

Exercise:

Say the following and render it into English orally:

1) Tā méiyou tā dìdi nèmma gāu.

2) Tā fùchin méiyou nǐ fùchin nèmma yǒuchyán.

3) Jànchē méiyou chìchē nèmma kwài.

4) Běipíng méiyou Shànghǎi nèmma dà.

5) Shūfáng méiyou kètīng nèmma cháng.

6) Dzàijùngchē méiyou jànchē nèmma jùng.

7) Jīntyan méiyou dzwótyan nèmma rè. Nǐ jywéde dzěmmayàng?

8) Tā méiyou tā tàitai nèmma tsūngming.

9) Jīgwānchyāng méiyou shǒuchyāng nèmma fāngbyan.

10) Jyòujīnshānde fēijīchǎng méiyou Nyǒuywēde fēijīchǎng nèmma syīn.

Render the following into Chinese orally:

1) These windows are not as low as those windows.

2) His elder brother is not as fat as that guest of yours.

3) That French guest is not as thin as that Japanese girl.

4) In World War II wasn't Col.Wang as famous as Col.Li?

5) All the weapons used in World War I were not as powerful as atomic weapons.

6) I don't remember our guests' individual ages as clearly as my wife does.

7) How come this shoe of this pair of shoes is not as new as the other one?

8) Who said that girls are not as intelligent as boys are? That all depends how intelligent the boys are.

Pattern 2

Degrees of comparison with adverbs gèng and dzwèi

這個lyǔgwǎn 的kètīng很大.	The parlor (lounge) of this hotel is very large.
那個 lyǔgwǎn 的 kètīng gèng大.	The lounge of that hotel is even larger.
我 jù 的 那個lyǔgwǎn 的 kètīng 最大.	The lounge of the hotel where I stay is the largest.

Examples:

1) 這 shwāng kwài 子 dwǎn.	This pair of chopsticks is short.
那 shwāng kwài 子 gèng dwǎn.	That pair of chopsticks is even shorter.
日本 kwài子 最 dwǎn.	Japanese chopsticks are the shortest.
2) 王 Páijǎng很 gāu.	Platoon Leader Wang is tall.
Lǐ Páijǎng gèng gāu.	Platoon Leader Li is even taller.
Jīn Páijǎng 最 gāu.	Platoon Leader Jin is the tallest.
3) 他的大兒子fēicháng shòu.	His eldest son is extremely thin.
Di二個兒子gèng shòu.	(His) second son is thinner still.
小兒子最 shòu.	(His) youngest son is the thinnest.

Exercise:

a. Say the following in Chinese:

	very good	even better	the best
Ex.	hěn hǎu	gèng hǎu	dzwèi hǎu

1) very easy, even easier, easiest

2) really smart, even smarter, smartest

3) too young, even younger, youngest

4) near, nearer, nearest

5) very interesting, even more interesting, most interesting

6) unusually difficult, even more difficult, most difficult

7) unusually low, even lower, lowest

8) unusually short (opp.gāu), even shorter, shortest

9) unusually fat, even fatter, fattest

10) unusually fierce, even fiercer, fiercest

b. Say the following and render it into English orally:

1) Tāde Jūnggwo péngyou hěn dwō.

Tā dìdide Jūnggwo péngyou gèng dwō.

Tā fùchinde Jūnggwo péngyou dzwèi dwō.

2) Tāde màudz fēicháng gwèi

Tā jyějyede màudz gèng gwèi.

Tā mǔchinde màudz dzwèi gwèi.

3) Běipíngde rén hěn dwō.

Nánjīngde rén gèng dwō.

Shànghǎide rén dzwèi dwō.

4) Syānsheng chànggēr chàngde hǎutīngjíle.

Tàitai chànggēr chàngde gèng hǎutīng.

Syáujye chànggēr chàngde dzwèi hǎutīng.

5) Dièrtsz̀ shr̀jyèdàjànde shr̀ wǒ gēge jìde fēicháng chīngchu.

Dièrtsz̀ shr̀jyèdàjànde shr̀ wǒ mǔchin jìde gèng chīngchu.

Dièrtsz̀ shr̀jyèdàjànde shr̀ wǒ fùchin jìde dzwèi chīngchu.

6) Wǔnyán yǐchyán de fēijī fēide jēn kwài.

Chyùnyán de syīn fēijī fēide gèng kwài.

Jīnnyánde dzwèi syīnde fēijī fēide dzwèi kwài.

Homework

Render the following sentences into Chinese orally:

1) Weapons used in World War I were not the same as those used in World War II.

2) How is everything? You look thinner than before.

3) Right. I am not as fat as I was a few months ago.

4) Are all things difficult to buy during war time? It depends on what you want to buy.

5) Do you remember which country was the first one to use atomic weapons?

6) The doors of this house are too low, but the doors of my house are even lower.

7) That guest who has only one hand is very stern.

8) How can you forget her name? You told me that she is the richest girl in this city.

V. Reading

A. Characters (Nos. 189-196)

189.	站	jàn	V : stand	站起來	stand up
			N : station, depot	火車站	railway station
				chì車站	bus station
190.	起	chǐ	V : rise, get up	起來	get up
				想不起來	can't recollect it
				買不起	can't afford to buy(it)
191.	把	bǎ	CV: (brings object to front of verb)	把筆拿起來	pick up the pen
				把門關上	close the door
192.	菜	tsài	N : vegetables: dish of food	作菜	cook dishes
				要菜	order (in a restaurant)
				沒甚麼菜	nothing much (to eat)
193.	給	gěi	V : give	給我一本書	give me a book
			CV: for, to (for benefit of)	給他作飯	cook for him

L. 39

194.	自	dz̀	BF: self	自己	- self
195.	己	jǐ	BF: self	我自己買	- I'll buy (it) myself
196.	拿	ná	V : take, carry (smaller articles)	拿起來 拿走 拿東西	- pick up - take away - take or carry things

B. Sentences

1. 請你們別 kèchi, 多吃 dyǎn 兒菜.
2. Nín作的菜真好吃.
3. 請 nín 自己多拿一 dyǎn 兒. 這個魚是我太太作的.
4. 請你站起來給我把那張紙放在地下.
5. 誰願意把自己的東西給別人?
6. 要是有女人進來,所有的男人都應當站起來.
7. 到中國飯 gwǎn 兒去.我老不會要菜.
8. 他姓甚麼,那個月走的,我都想不起來了.

9. 我 jyā 裡父親最忙,早上六 dyǎn 鐘起來,晚上七八 dyǎn 回來.

10. 這三百本書一個人拿不了, dzài 找兩個人幫忙 ba.

11. 慢一 dyǎn 兒快一 dyǎn 兒都行,就不能站 je 不走.

12. 那張畫兒 jùng 極了,一個人拿不起來.

13. A: 錢夠麼? B: 那要看你坐船 hái-是坐 fēijī.

14. 這個手表 gēn 你拿走了的那個手表一yàng.

15. 在那個學校裡念書一年用三千四百 kwài 錢. 我念不起.

16. 我沒有你那麼會開車.明天晚上你開我進城 dzěn 麼 yàng?

L. 39

C. Story

一個美國人,一個中國人,兩個人在飯gwǎn兒吃飯.

那個美國人說,你們中國人吃飯用kwài子很不方byan.

那個中國人說,你們用好jǐ yàng兒的dāu子, chā子, gèng不方byan.

美國人說:「你們吃的菜都放在一kwài兒.不好. 我們自己吃自己的菜.很方byan.」

中國人說:「自己吃自己的,很沒意思. 中國人chángcháng把菜給別人, 把魚把菜放在那個人的wǎn裡.」

美國人又說:「你們的jwō子很大, kwài子太dwǎn, 把菜給別人吃得站起來. hái是不方byan.」

中國人說:「可以用很cháng的kwài子.」

美國人說:「不tswò. 用cháng kwài子把菜給別人很方byan, 可是自己吃的時候多麼

不方byan.

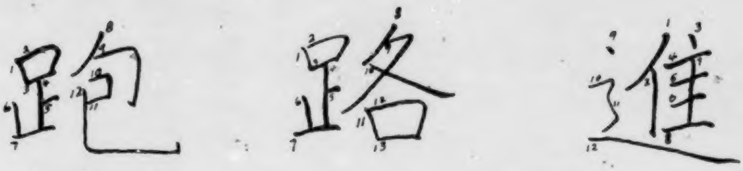
那個中國人說：「你用 cháng kwài子.不是給自己吃,是給別人吃. 別人也用 cháng kwài子給你吃.」

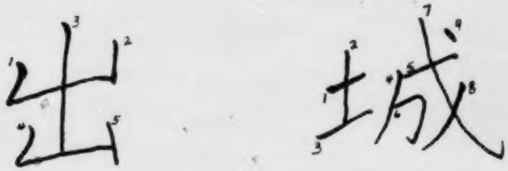
「我沒 tīng說gwo 你真會說 syàu話!」

L. 39

VI. WRITING

A. Writing (Characters 121-125)





B. Radicals

1.	𧾷	(foot, 157)	as in:	跑,路
2.	辶	(stop and go, 162)	as in:	進
3.	凵	(receptacle, 17)	as in:	出
4.	土	(earth, 32)	as in:	城

VOCABULARY INDEX

A

			LESSON
a	P:	(sentence suffix)	35
ǎi	SV:	be short (opp. gāu)	38

B

bǎ	CV:	(brings object to front of main verb)	28
bàn	V:	manage	33
báityān	(MA)N:	daytime, during the day	32
bái	SV:	be white	32
bāng(ju)	V:	help (someone)	29
bāngmáng	VO:	render assistance	29
bǎu	SV:	be satisfied (after eating)	36
Běijí	N:	North Pole	38
běnlái	MA:	originally	34
bèn	SV:	be stupid	37
bǐ	V/CV:	compared with; than	38
bìng	N/SV:	sickness/sick	31
bìngle	V:	become sick	31
búdà	A:	not very	31
bùbīng	N:	infantry	36
bùgǎndāng!	IE:	you flatter me!	34

C

chà	V:	differ by; lack, be short	32
chàbudwō	IE:	almost, about	33
chíbīng	N:	cavalry	36
jwāngjyǎ chíbīng	N:	armored cavalry	36
chígwài	SV:	be strange	37
-chǐ	RVE:	afford	37
chǐlai	V:	rise, get up	29
-chǐlai	P:	(verb suffix, indicating upward direction)	29
chīng	SV:	be light	29
chīngchu	SV:	be clear (in meaning)	30
chīngjīchyāng	N:	light machine gun	29
chyántyān	(MA)N:	day before yesterday	34

D

dā	V:	build (of temporary structure only)	37
dǎ	V:	fight	34

			LESSON
dǎjàng	VO:	fight a battle, make war	34
dǎswàn	V:	plan to	35
dài	V:	take or bring along	29
dī	SV:	be low	39
dìsya	N:	ground, floor	29
dwǎn	SV:	be short (opp. cháng)	38
dwó (or dwóma)	A:	how? to what degree?	30
-dyǎn	M:	hour	32
dyǎnsyin	N:	light refreshments	30
dyōu	V:	lose, misplace	36
dz̀jǐ	N:	self, oneself	35
dzài	A:	again (in future)	28
dzàijùngchē	N:	truck	28
dzāng	SV:	be dirty	37
dzǎu	SV:	be early	33
dzěmma	A:	why? how is it that?	31
dzěmma le	IE:	what's happened? What's the matter?	31
dzěmma bàn	IE:	what can be done (about it)?	33
dzěmmayang	IE:	how about...? how's everything?	39
dzèmma	A:	in this way, to this degree, so	38
jèmma	A:	in this way, to this degree, so	38
dzwòjàn	VO:	make war, combat	35
	N:	operation	35
E			
è	SV:	be hungry	36
F			
fádz	N:	way, method	36
méi fádz	IE:	there's no way out! it can't be helped	36
fàntīng	N:	dining room (eating hall)	28
fāngbyan	SV:	be convenient	38
fàng	V:	let go of; put, place; shoot, fire	29
fàngsyachyu	V:	put down (there)	29
fàngsyalai	V:	put down (here)	29
fēi	V:	fly	39
fēicháng	A:	unusually	39
-fēn	M:	minute	32
fújōu	N:	ponton	37
jōuchyáu(fúchyáu)	N:	ponton bridge	37
chyáu	N:	bridge	37

G			LESSON
gānjing	SV:	be clean	37
gāng	A:	just this minute	33
gānggāng	A:	just this minute	33
gāngtsái	MA:	just a moment ago	33
gāusyìng	SV:	be happy, in high spirits	30
gàusung	V:	tell, inform	33
gèng	A:	still more, even,-er	39
gūngbīng	N:	engineer (branch of service)	37
gwò	V:	pass, past, exceed; cross over	32
-gwò	P:	(experiential suffix to verbs)	34

H			
hǎule	SV/V:	be well again; it's ready, done	31
hé	N:	river	36
hēi	SV:	be black, dark	33
hòutyān	(MA)N:	day after tomorrow	34
hwài	SV:	be bad	31
búhwài	SV:	be not bad, pretty good	31
hwàile	V:	become spoiled, get out of order	31
hwǒjyàn	N:	rocket	34
hwǒjyànpàu	N:	bazooka	34
hwǒjyàntǔng	N:	rocket launcher	34

J			
jāi	V:	take off (hat)	37
jànshr̀	N:	warfare	34
-je	P:	(verb suffix, indicating continuance)	29
jèngdzài	A:	just in the midst of	29
jìde	V:	remember, recollect	39
jr̄	M:	(measure for hands, feet, chicken, cat, etc.)	39
jūngtóu	N:	an hour	33
jūngwǔ	(MA)N:	noon	32
jùng	SV:	be heavy	29
jùngjīchyāng	N:	heavy machine gun	29
jyèshau	V:	introduce	34
jyòu	A:	at once	31
jywéde	V:	feel that, consider	35

K			
kǎbīnchyāng	N:	carbine	28
kàn	V:	see, think, consider	35

			LESSON
kànjyan	V:	see	31
kě	A:	indeed, certainly, however,	33
kě	SV:	be thirsty	36
-kè	M:	quarter-hour	32
kèren	N:	guest	39
kěn	AV:	be willing to	36
kū	V:	cry, cry about	30
kǔngpà	MA:	be afraid that; used in the sense of "perhaps"	36
pà	V:	be afraid of, fear that	36

L

láujyà	IE:	may I trouble you? much obliged!	28
lǎu	A:	always, keep on	35
lěng	SV:	be cold	38
lìhai	SV:	be fierce, strong, severe	39
lìkè	A:	immediately	31
lóutī	N:	stairs	37
lyǎn	N:	face	37
dyōulyǎn	IE:	lose face, lose prestige	37
lyàng	SV:	be light or bright (opp.dark)	33
lyàng	M:	(measure for cars)	31
-lyǎu	RVE:	(indicates capacity for doing something, or for carrying it through to completion)	37
lyóudànpàu	N:	howitzer	37

M

měi	NU:	each	30
mén	M:	(measure for artillery pieces)	28
míngbai	V:	understand (clearly)	30

N

ná	V:	take hold of; take, carry (small articles)	29
nà yàu kàn	IE:	it all depends on...	39
nèmma	A:	in that way, to that degree, so	38

P

pàng	SV:	be fat (of persons)	39
pàubīng	N:	artillery (branch of service)	37
píngcháng	SV:	be ordinary, common	35

			LESSON
R			
-r	P:	(diminutive suffix to nouns)	28
r̀dz	N:	day; a special day	33
rè	SV:	be hot	38
rènde	V:	know, recognize, be acquainted with	34
rènshr	V:	know, recognize, be acquainted with	34
rēng	V:	throw (away)	37
S			
shān	N:	mountain	36
shàngwǔ	(MA)N:	forenoon	32
shēngchì	SV:	get angry, be angry	30
shǒu	N:	hand	29
shòu	SV:	be thin (opp. pàng)	39
shr̀jye(shang)	N:	in the world	38
shr̀jyè-dàjàn	N:	World War	39
shūfáng	N:	study, den (book room)	28
shūfu	SV:	be comfortable	31
bùshūfu	SV:	be uncomfortable; indisposed, not feel well	31
shwèijyàu	VO:	sleep, retire	32
sùng(gěi)	V:	present (as a gift)	28
-swèi	M:	year(s) old	30
swèishù	N:	age (year count)	39
swǒyǒude	N:	all one has, all there are, all of the	39
syàwǔ	(MA)N:	afternoon	32
syǎuhár	N:	children	28
syàu	V:	laugh or smile; laugh at	35
syàuhwà	V:	make fun of	35
	N:	a joke	35
syǐ	V:	wash	37
syílyǎn	VO:	wash face	37
T			
tèbyé	A/SV:	specially/special, distinctive	35
tīngjyan	V:	hear	31
-tǐng	M:	(measure for machine guns)	28
tóu	N:	head	29
tóu-	P:	first	30
tsúngchyán	MA:	formerly	30
-tsz̀	M:	a time, occasion	30
twō	V:	take off (clothes)	37

			LESSON
tyānchi	N:	weather	38
tyáu	M:	(measure for rivers, roads, fish, etc.)	36

W

wǎn	SV:	be late	33
wàng	V:	forget	30
wǔchì	N:	weapon	39
ywándž wǔchì	N:	atomic weapon	39
wǔfàn	N:	noon meal	32

Y

-yàng	M:	kind, sort, way	38
yàngdz	N:	style, appearance; sample	38
yíyàng	SV:	be the same, alike, similar	38
	A:	equally, similarly	
yějànpàu	N:	field piece	28
-yè	M:	night	32
yèli	(MA)N:	nighttime, during the night	32
yíyè	(MA)N:	a night, the whole night	32
bànyè	(MA)N:	midnight	32
yílù-píngān	IE:	a pleasant journey!	35
yǐchyán	MA:	previously; formerly	34
..yǐchyán	MA:	before.....ago	35
chyán-	N:	front; former, ...ago	35
yǐhòu	MA:	hereafter; thereafter	34
..yǐhòu	MA:	after.....	35
yǒu	CV:	be as much as; be as	38
yǒubìng	VO:	become sick	30
yǒumíng	SV:	prominent, well-known, famous	34
yòu	A:	again (in past)	28
yùbei	V:	prepare	36
ywándždàn	N:	atomic bomb	35
ywándž	N:	atom	35
	SV:	atomic	35
ywándžnéng	N:	atomic energy	35

US GOVERMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1978-789-088/7622